

# Test

## on unit 3

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه  
يمكنك حل الاختبار  
إلكترونياً وتصويبه

### A. Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى ماعلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).



1. What's Mrs Karima's job ? - .....  
a. A teacher      b. A nurse      c. A doctor      d. An engineer
2. Where does she work ? .....  
a. In a hospital      b. In a museum      c. In a shop      d. At home
3. What did Mrs Karima use to do when she was young ? - .....  
a. To study very hard      b. To play tennis  
c. To go shopping      d. To drive a car
4. Why did she use to work when she was young ? .....  
a. To pay for her parents      b. To pay for her studies  
c. To pay for her brother      d. To pay for her sister

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nada is telling Eman what she did last weekend.

Eman : What did you do last weekend ?

Nada : (1) .....

Eman : Does your brother love video games ?

Nada : (2) .....

Eman : (3) ..... ?

Nada : We played them at home.

Eman : Did you enjoy playing ?

Nada : (4) .....

Eman : (5) ..... ?

Nada : Sure. We'll be happy.

(Behira / Tahrir 2023)

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

We should all be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but his family used to travel to many places because his father was

an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working in 2001, he worked in a special hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy helped to give people new hearts for the first time. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often used to die. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The underlined pronoun "he" refers to .....  
 a. Magdy Yacoub                      b. Magdy's father  
 c. Magdy's grandfather              d. Magdy's great grandfather
- The underlined word "special" means .....  
 a. usual              b. very big              c. not usual              d. very old
- The birthplace of Dr Magdy is .....  
 a. Aswan              b. Cairo              c. London              d. Bilbeis

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Why do you think Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children ?

5. Why did Magdy Yacoub's family use to travel to many places ?

6. Give a suitable title for this passage.

### D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 1. The heart ..... blood around the body.  
 a. pumps              b. breathes              c. infects              d. cuts
- 2. ...., which is made of gold and silver, is very expensive.  
 a. Emergency              b. Money              c. Charity              d. Jewellery
- 3. We are ..... of being Egyptians.  
 a. pride              b. proud              c. sad              d. tired
- 4. **SB** A/An ..... is someone who works for no money.  
 a. volunteer              b. engineer              c. teacher              d. patient

(Giza - Haram 2023)

(Cairo - El-Sherabia 2022)



5. **A:** Do you know what I ..... ?  
**B:** I'm sorry, I don't understand.  
 a. agree                      b. mine                      c. main                      d. mean
6. This book is very interesting. I ..... it to you. (*Behira / Mahmudia 2023*)  
 a. recommend                      b. advise  
 c. tell                      d. say
7. Ali didn't ..... to swim in the sea.  
 a. using                      b. use                      c. used                      d. uses
8. **SB** Do you know the ..... between "know" and "no"?  
 a. number                      b. difference                      c. idea                      d. education
9. **WB** Where ..... you use to live when you were young ?  
 a. do                      b. did                      c. are                      d. were
10. Did he use to ..... a car ?  
 a. drive                      b. driving                      c. drove                      d. driven

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Sameera Moussa ..... (is) born in 1917.
2. **SB** I ..... (go) to primary school for six years. *(Aswan – Nasr 2022)*
3. **WB** Why did Mrs Karima Mohammed ..... (used) to study hard ?
4. Who ..... (win) the Africa Cup of Nations in 2018 ? *(Giza – Bolak 2023)*

### E. Writing

- 6** Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : **محبات عنه في نهاية الكتاب**  
**"Dr Magdy Yacoub"** (Sharkia – Fakous 2023)

[illegible]

# Test

## on unit 4

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تلويح

يمكنك حل الاختبار  
إلكترونياً وتصويبه

### A. Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).



1. The Ancient Egyptians were very .....  
a. bad                      b. evil                      c. clever                      d. stupid
2. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... for making food.  
a. pots                      b. bowls                      c. pots and bowls                      d. plastic plates
3. Pots were made of .....  
a. mud                      b. clay                      c. wood                      d. metal
4. Clay was taken from the .....  
a. sea                      b. beach                      c. lake                      d. River Nile

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

A guide is showing some tourists the Karnak Temple.

Tourist : Excuse me. What is this tall stone called ?

Guide : (1) .....

Tourist : (2) ..... ?

Guide : The needle is nearly thirty metres tall.

Tourist : (3) ..... ?

Guide : They're hieroglyphic writings.

Tourist : Who built it ?

Guide : (4) ..... They were great people.

Tourist : (5) .....

Guide : You're welcome.

(Gharbia - Santa 2023)

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Objects from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. They can also show us that we use many of the same objects today!

In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. The mirrors were



made of metal and had interesting designs. Where do you have mirrors in your home ?

The Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food. These objects were made of clay, which came from the River Nile. While some people were mixing ingredients in bowls, other people used stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl. How do we make bread today?

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .....  
a. years      b. objects      c. designs      d. mirrors
- The underlined word "protect" means .....  
a. make      b. attack      c. help      d. keep safe
- You can look at yourself at the .....  
a. bowls      b. mirror      c. pots      d. clay

b. Answer the following questions :

- Give a suitable title for this passage.  
.....

- What do you think of the Ancient Egyptians ?  
.....

- What did the Ancient Egyptians use mirrors for ?  
.....

### D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- You mustn't ..... rubbish here.  
a. drop      b. dropped      c. to drop      d. dropping
- What ..... when I phoned you ?  
a. were you doing      b. you were doing  
c. are you doing      d. did you do
- SB** We must ..... the historic places around the world.  
a. connect      b. suspect      c. protect      d. affect
- You ..... touch the statues in the museums. (Sharkia - Fakos 2023)  
a. must      b. could      c. should      d. mustn't
- While I ..... about the museum, my mother bought me some juice.  
a. read      b. is reading      c. was reading      d. reading

- 6. Can you ..... what you mean ?  
a. explain      b. plan      c. know      d. recognize
- 7. Horse ..... are really wonderful. I like watching them so much in the stadium.  
a. ruins      b. races      c. stables      d. places
- 8. As Mr Omar was walking to work, he ..... an old friend.  
a. arrived      b. lost      c. saw      d. gave
- 9. **WB** The Cleopatra's Needle is next to the ..... Thames in London.  
a. Canal      b. Ocean      c. Sea      d. River
- 10. Many tourists go to Luxor to enjoy visiting the .....  
a. pyramids      b. temples      c. towers      d. beaches

(Behira - Edko 2022)

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

- 1. You ..... (must) eat or drink in a museum.
- 2. As I ..... (read) my book, the phone rang.  
(Alexandria - West Alexandria 2022)
- 3. While Hassan ..... (play) football, he broke his arm. (Sohag - Sakla 2023)
- 4. You must ..... (listening) to the teacher during lessons.

(Dakahlia - Mataria 2022)

## E. Writing

### 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : **مجاهاة عندي في نهاية الكتاب**

"A historic place you visited" (Sharkia - Abokabeer 2023)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## Monthly assessments

تقييمات شهرية

## November Test

اختبار شهر نوفمبر

### A. Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... for making food.  
a. dots                      b. pots                      c. tables                      d. mirrors
2. The pots were made of .....  
a. plastic                      b. metal                      c. clay                      d. copper
3. They brought clay from the .....  
a. Red Sea                      b. River Nile                      c. Lake Nasser                      d. Canal
4. Using pots and bowls is .....  
a. bad                      b. unhealthy                      c. healthy                      d. ugly

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

*Ayman asks Ashraf about the importance of rubbish collectors.*

**Ayman :** What do you think of rubbish collectors ?

**Ashraf :** I think they are (1) .....

**Ayman :** Heroes ! (2) ..... ?

**Ashraf :** Because they do something very useful.

**Ayman :** (3) ..... ?

**Ashraf :** The city would be terrible without them.

**Ayman :** Are street cleaners important ?

**Ashraf :** (4) .....

**Ayman :** What should we do to help them ?

**Ashraf :** (5) .....

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The Ancient Egyptians had a great culture and great history. They were the first to make some important objects. Objects from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. In Ancient

Egypt, many people used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good : the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. The mirrors were made of metal and had interesting designs. Also, the Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food. These objects were made of clay, which came from the River Nile. On the other hand, the Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet. Senet boxes have 30 squares. This box is made of wood and is about 3,500 years old. Some people didn't have senet boxes, but they still played the game. They drew the squares on the floor.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The Ancient Egyptians used ..... to paint around their eyes.  
a. boards      b. mirrors      c. tables      d. cards
- The underlined words "look good" means being .....  
a. ugly      b. beautiful      c. tall      d. happy
- Senet boxes have thirty .....  
a. squares      b. triangles      c. circles      d. rectangles

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

5. Why do you think people drew squares on the floor ?

6. What do the underlined words "These objects" refer to ?

## D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- A ..... helps people who are poor or don't have a home.  
a. countryside      b. charity      c. nature      d. school
- A terrible event, such as an earthquake, is a .....  
a. volcano      b. flood      c. disaster      d. party
- A/An ..... is someone who works for no money.  
a. volunteer      b. engineer      c. teacher      d. patient



4. The Ancient Egyptian doctors ..... down their ideas.  
a. put                      b. made                      c. wrote                      d. took
5. This chemical helps to ..... away mosquitos.  
a. put                      b. give                      c. keep                      d. run
6. Bees and ants are .....  
a. animals                      b. plants                      c. birds                      d. insects
7. Ali's uncle works for a big oil ..... in the UAE.  
a. work                      b. company                      c. job                      d. office
8. When we sat down for a picnic, lots of runners ..... through the park.  
a. ran                      b. runs                      c. were running                      d. run
9. They moved to a bigger flat a year later ..... I was born.  
a. while                      b. ago                      c. when                      d. from
10. My grandfather used to ..... football when he was young.  
a. plays                      b. play                      c. played                      d. playing

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. My uncle used ..... (be) a firefighter, but now he is a police officer.
2. Dina ..... (not use) give money to a charity, but now she does.
3. As Karim ..... (take) photos of the animals, he lost his phone.
4. While Mona was playing tennis, she ..... (hurts) her arm.

**E. Writing**

- 6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend Khalid to tell him about "What we should do to help the environment". Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@gmail. com. Your friend's email address is khalid@gmail.com.**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Sample Test

### 1

#### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A ..... helps people who are poor or don't have a home.  
a. countryside      b. charity      c. nature      d. school
2. A terrible event, such as an earthquake, is a / an .....  
a. plan      b. project      c. disaster      d. activity
3. A/An ..... is someone who works for no money.  
a. volunteer      b. engineer      c. teacher      d. patient
4. The Ancient Egyptian doctors ..... down their ideas.  
a. put      b. made      c. wrote      d. took
5. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.  
a. surgeon      b. teacher      c. dentist      d. nurse
6. A ..... teaches people how to play or improve a sport.  
a. doctor      b. scientist      c. sports coach      d. surgeon
7. Do you know the ..... between "know" and "no" ?  
a. number      b. difference      c. idea      d. education
8. My father got a job 15 years .....  
a. since      b. then      c. for      d. ago
9. They moved to a bigger flat a year later ..... I was born.  
a. while      b. ago      c. when      d. from
10. My grandfather used to ..... football when he was young.  
a. plays      b. play      c. played      d. playing

#### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :

1. My uncle used ..... (be) a firefighter, but now he is a police officer.
2. Dina ..... (not use) give money to a charity, but now she does.
3. Did you ..... (saw) the film last week ?
4. He ..... (meet) aunt Reem when he was 20.



## Sample Test 2

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You can watch sports matches at the ..... .  
a. school                      b. theatre                      c. stadium                      d. cinema
2. Muslims pray at ..... .  
a. cinemas                      b. stadiums                      c. mosques                      d. churches
3. You can find a lot of ..... at museums.  
a. statues                      b. fruits                      c. vegetables                      d. plays
4. .... are buildings which are not complete.  
a. Pots                      b. Ruins                      c. Towers                      d. Statues
5. This chemical helps to ..... away mosquitos.  
a. put                      b. give                      c. keep                      d. run
6. Bees and ants are important ..... .  
a. animals                      b. plants                      c. birds                      d. insects
7. Ali's uncle works for a big oil ..... in the UAE.  
a. work                      b. company                      c. job                      d. office
8. When we sat down for a picnic, lots of runners ..... through the park.  
a. ran                      b. runs                      c. were running                      d. run
9. I was doing my homework when my sister ..... me.  
a. call                      b. called                      c. calling                      d. was calling
10. You mustn't ..... or eat in the library.  
a. was drinking                      b. drinks                      c. drank                      d. drink

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. You ..... (must) run in a museum.
2. Must you ..... (buying) a ticket or use a guide ?
3. As Karim ..... (take) photos of the animals, he lost his phone.
4. While Mona was playing tennis, she ..... (hurts) her arm.

## Answers of Sample Test

1

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- |            |                 |               |          |
|------------|-----------------|---------------|----------|
| 1. charity | 2. disaster     | 3. volunteer  | 4. wrote |
| 5. surgeon | 6. sports coach | 7. difference | 8. ago   |
| 9. from    | 10. play        |               |          |

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :

- |          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| 1. to be | 2. didn't use to |
| 3. see   | 4. met           |

## Answers of Sample Test

2

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- |            |            |            |                 |
|------------|------------|------------|-----------------|
| 1. stadium | 2. mosques | 3. statues | 4. Ruins        |
| 5. keep    | 6. insects | 7. company | 8. were running |
| 9. called  | 10. drink  |            |                 |

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :

- |               |         |
|---------------|---------|
| 1. mustn't    | 2. buy  |
| 3. was taking | 4. hurt |



## Vocabulary

jewellery	مجوهرات
blood	دم
lungs	الرئتان
manager	مدير
medicine	دواء
brave	شجاع
disaster	كارثة طبيعية
charity	جمعية خيرية
countryside	الريف
proud of	فخور بـ
pump (ed)	مضخة/يضخ
rubbish collector	جامع القمامة
society	مجتمع
heart	القلب
stomach	المعدة
hero	بطل
the Red Crescent	الهلال الأحمر
infection	عدوى
volunteer	متطوع
nuclear scientist	عالم نووي
street cleaner	عامل نظافة الشارع
surgeon	جراح

## Language

### 1 The Past Simple Tense: زمن الماضي البسيط

#### Affirmative

• I visited my uncle yesterday.

#### Key words

(yesterday - الماضي ... last - أمس ago  
- في الماضي - in the past - منذ ago  
+ سنة ماضية + to + سنة ماضية + in +  
(مدة + for + سنة (in 2010) في الماضي  
My father was born in 1980.

#### Negative

• I did not arrive late for school yesterday.

#### Question

• Did you watch TV last night?  
• What time did you go to bed?

### 2 (used to) for regular past habits and routines:

Subject + used to + inf. اعتاد أن  
- He used to live in the countryside.  
Subject + didn't use to + inf. لم يعتد أن  
- I didn't use to know much about my family history.

## Skills

### 1 Discussing family history: مناقشة تاريخ العائلة

• A: Where did your parents use to live when they were young?

• B: They used to live in Tanta.  
أين اعتاد والدك أن يعيش في الماضي؟

اعتادوا أن يعيشوا في طنطا.

• A: When you were ten, did you use to live in a different house?  
عندما كنت في العاشرة، هل اعتدت أن تعيش في منزل مختلف؟

• B: Yes, I did.

### 2 Checking understanding: التأكد من الفهم

• What do you mean?

ماذا تعني؟

• I mean, ...

أنا أعني ...

• I'm not sure what you mean.

لست متأكدًا مما تعنيه.

• In other words, ...

بمعنى آخر ...



### A Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الشرفية ٢٠٢٣

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. Who is your hero?

a) My father.

b) My mother.

c) My friend.

d) My uncle.

2. Where was he born?

a) In a village.

b) In a city.

c) In a town.

d) In a tent.

3. What is he interested in?

a) Tennis.

b) Football.

c) Helping people.

d) Reading.

4. What's his job?

a) A teacher.

b) A doctor.

c) A nurse.

d) A baker.

### B Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

**Ola and Salma are talking about Dr Magdy Yacoub.**

الشرفية ٢٠٢٢

**Ola** : We should be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He is an important hero.

**Salma** : (1).....?

**Ola** : He was born in 1935.

**Salma** : (2).....?

**Ola** : He was born in Sharkia.

**Salma** : Where did he work in the past?

**Ola** : (3).....

**Salma** : Do you want to be a doctor and work in a hospital, too?

**Ola** : (4).....

**Salma** : (5).....





## Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

سؤال ٢٣

The Egyptian handball team are heroes! They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia in 2020. They won the final against Tunisia 27- 23. That means they are the best team in Africa! This is not the first time Egypt's handball team played in a final. In 2019, the junior team won the under-19 World Cup Final 32-28 against Germany. They were the first team from Africa to win it. In 2018, the senior team were also in the final of the Africa Cup of Nations, but lost the final against Tunisia. Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport. Let's hope the Egyptian team can win competitions again!

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the passage about?

2. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

3. Do you think that lots of people in Egypt love handball? Why? Why not?

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. In 2020, they won the final against .....

- a) Germany      b) Tunisia      c) Libya      d) Iraq

5. The senior handball team lost the final of the Africa Cup of Nations in .....

- a) 2018      b) 2019      c) 2017      d) 2020

6. "....." is the opposite of the underlined word "win".

- a) Pass      b) Succeed      c) Lose      d) Fall



## Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should keep your body clean to stop .....

- a) burns      b) functions      c) patients      d) infections

2. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill. الصومية ٢٠٢٢

- a) sports coach      b) surgeon      c) police officer      d) hero

3. Mrs Mona is very ..... She never gets nervous. الصومية ٢٠٢٢

- a) ill      b) sick      c) patient      d) careless

4. Dr Magdy Yacoub helped many people ..... heart problems.

- a) with      b) by      c) in      d) on



5. A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.  
a) scientist      b) police officer      c) nurse      d) volunteer
6. Nurses do ..... work when most of their sick people got better.  
a) heroic      b) terrible      c) horrible      d) bad
7. Use this door only when there is a/an .....  
a) ball      b) concert      c) emergency      d) wedding
8. My parents ..... home late last Thursday. I was very worried.  
a) didn't come      b) comes      c) come      d) came
9. A: Why ..... your friends very happy?  
B: Because they passed their exams.  
a) were      b) did      c) do      d) are
10. Where did your grandparents ..... when they were young?  
a) lived      b) use to live      c) used to live      d) living

المراجعة ٢٠٢٢

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. The weather ..... (be) nice yesterday.  
2. Baher ..... (lose) his arm in the last accident.  
3. How did she ..... (sang)?  
4. Where did you ..... (spent) your last holiday?



## Writing

**6 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Dina to tell her about your hero. Your name is Yasmin and your email address is yasmin@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is dina@gmail.com.**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%

Take more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!



## Vocabulary

ancient	أثري/قديم جدًا	keep away	يبعد
arch	قوس/قنطرة	local people	السكان المحليون
awesome	رائع	mosque	مسجد
behave (d)	يتصرف	national	قومي/وطني
castle	قلعة	necklace	عقد/قلادة
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	papyrus	ورق/نبات البردي
chemical	مادة كيميائية	pray (ed)	يصلّي
clay	طين/طينة	race	سباق
coin	عملة معدنية	recommend (ed)	يرشح/يوصي بـ
damage (d)	يُدمر/يُتلف	ruins	أطلال
date to	يرجع تاريخه إلى	ruler	حاكم
debate	مناقشة/مناظرة	statue	تمثال
entrance to	مدخل (إلى)	stone circles	الدوائر الحجرية
environment	البيئة	temple	معبد
follow (ed)	يتبع	theatre	مسرح
historic	تاريخي	tool	أداة

## Language

- 1- Must/Mustn't** يجب/لا يجب  
**Subject + must/mustn't + Inf.**  
 - You **must** drop litter in the bin.  
 - You **mustn't** damage historic places.
- 2- The Past Continuous Tense** الزمن المتواصل في الماضي  
**Subject + was/were + v.ing**  
 - Aya and Ola **were doing** their homework all night.  
**While/As + past continuous, past simple**  
 - **While/As** mum **was cooking**, grandfather **arrived**.  
**When + past simple + past continuous**  
 - **When** the game **started**, it **was raining**.

## Skills

### Speaking:

- 1. Asking for information on the phone**
- How can I help you?
  - I'd like to know what time the museum is open.
  - Hello, can you tell me if the museum is open on Fridays?
  - Certainly./Of course. It's open daily.
  - Can I buy the tickets online?
  - Sure./Of course.
- 2. Asking for and giving opinions**
- What do you think, Abbas? Is tourism good for historic places?
  - I think that tourists damage places in other ways.
  - I don't agree with you.
  - I see what you mean.
  - I don't think so.



### A

### Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الفاخرة ٢٠٢٣  
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... for making food.

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| a) pots           | b) bowls        |
| c) plastic plates | d) both a and b |

2. Pots were made of .....

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| a) mud  | b) clay  |
| c) wood | d) metal |

3. Clay was taken from the .....

- |            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| a) Red Sea | b) beach      |
| c) lake    | d) River Nile |

4. The Ancient Egyptians were very .....

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| a) bad    | b) evil   |
| c) clever | d) stupid |

### B

### Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

**Ramy suggests going to the Citadel.**

الفاخرة ٢٠٢٣

**Ramy :** Hello, Samy. What about going to the Citadel?

**Samy :** (1).....

**Ramy :** (2).....?

**Samy :** We can take a taxi.

**Ramy :** (3).....?

**Samy :** Salah al-Din Al Ayouby built it.

**Ramy :** Why?

**Samy :** (4).....

**Ramy :** Is it a historic building?

**Samy :** (5).....





## Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

القراءة ٢٢ - ٢٣

Egypt is a great country in the Middle East. Its capital is Cairo city. The main language is Arabic. The weather in Egypt is fine all the year, so many tourists come from all over the world to enjoy it. When they come to Egypt, they enjoy its ancient places such as the Egyptian Museum to see the ancient statues. They also visit Luxor and Aswan to enjoy and see Luxor Temples and the High Dam in Aswan. Also, they visit the Cairo Tower where they can have a look on the whole city of Cairo. It is a beautiful view. Tourists can have delicious meals at the restaurants in Cairo.

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

2. What does the underlined word "they" refer to?

3. Why do you think tourists like to visit Egypt?

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "delicious" in the passage means .....

- a) bad                      b) dangerous                      c) tasty                      d) ancient

5. The main language in Egypt is .....

- a) French                      b) Arabic  
c) Italian                      d) Spanish

6. The weather in Egypt is ..... all the year.

- a) fine                      b) bad                      c) cold                      d) very hot



## Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of "modern" is .....

- a) ancient                      b) difficult  
c) new                      d) fashionable

2. This place is ....., I like it very much.

- a) boring                      b) easy                      c) awesome                      d) busy

البنية ٢٢ - ٢٣

3. You can see beautiful ..... on Cleopatra's Needle. المتنوع ٢٠٢٣  
 a) headings      b) designs      c) subheadings      d) storms
4. Dropping rubbish into the river can ..... water. المتنوع ٢٠٢٣  
 a) pollute      b) weigh      c) injure      d) follow
5. .... are bad events that damage many places. المتنوع ٢٠٢٣  
 a) Wars      b) Weddings      c) Birthdays      d) Parties
6. The crops were badly ..... by the storm. المتنوع ٢٠٢٣  
 a) attacked      b) attracted      c) damaged      d) debated
7. I read an interesting ..... in a magazine. المتنوع ٢٠٢٣  
 a) debate      b) report      c) paper      d) plan
8. You ..... be quiet in the library. المتنوع ٢٠٢٣  
 a) must      b) mustn't      c) can't      d) shouldn't
9. You ..... touch the paintings in an art gallery. المتنوع ٢٠٢٣  
 a) must      b) mustn't      c) have to      d) doesn't have to
10. When I phoned Soha, she ..... dinner. المتنوع ٢٠٢٣  
 a) having      b) has      c) is having      d) was having

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. During an exam, you ..... (must) copy from the other students. المتنوع ٢٠٢٣
2. You ..... (must) eat or drink in a museum. المتنوع ٢٠٢٣
3. As Karim ..... (take) photos of the animals, he lost his phone. المتنوع ٢٠٢٣
4. Marina ..... (cook) all morning yesterday. المتنوع ٢٠٢٣



## Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

**"A historic place you visited"** المتنوع ٢٠٢٣

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%

Take more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!





### November Model 1

10

#### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Fadi and Nadi are talking about street cleaners.

Fadi : What do you think of street cleaners?

Nadi : (1).....

Fadi : (2).....?

Nadi : I mean by heroes that they do something useful.

Fadi : Why do you think so?

Nadi : (3).....

Fadi : (4).....?

Nadi : We should encourage them and give them more money.

Fadi : But I think money is not enough.

Nadi : (5).....

#### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rubbish and polluted areas cause ..... and diseases for people.

- a) protection      b) infection      c) happiness      d) beauty

2. Students sometimes ..... experiments in the laboratory.

- a) get      b) do      c) make      d) spend

3. A natural ..... is a terrible event, such as an earthquake.

- a) water      b) science      c) gas      d) disaster

4. It is important to learn about ..... places around the world.

- a) scary      b) ugly      c) historic      d) boring

5. Rubbish in the river ..... wildlife.

- a) damages      b) cleans      c) recycles      d) protects

6. Magdy Yacoub is one of the greatest heart ..... in the world.

- a) engineers      b) architects      c) surgeons      d) artists

7. A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.

- a) baker                      b) teacher                      c) volunteer                      d) nurse

8. I ..... work, walked to the beach and met my friends.

- a) was finished                      b) finish                      c) finished                      d) finishing

9. My grandfather used to ..... tennis.

- a) play                      b) plays                      c) playing                      d) played

10. .... Sama entered the room, I was doing my homework.

- a) While                      b) If                      c) As                      d) When

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. What ..... (be) you doing at 9 o'clock yesterday?
2. Last year, my uncle ..... (buy) a new car.
3. What did you ..... (used) like when you were a child?
4. You mustn't ..... (using) a mobile phone in class.
5. My father was driving when the police (stop) ..... him.

**Part 2**

**Final Revision**



قم بمراجعة  
أهم المفردات  
والقواعد اللغوية  
والمهارات وحل  
المزيد من الأسئلة  
الخاصة بالوحدتين  
الثالثة والرابعة عن  
طريق الذهاب لجزء  
المراجعة الشهرية  
بملحق التقويم.



## November Model 2

7.5

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went to the stadium to watch the ..... between Egypt and Tunisia.  
a) primary                      b) brave                      c) national                      d) final
2. The lungs take in air and help us to .....  
a) breeze                      b) breath                      c) breathe                      d) freeze
3. People who work for no money are .....  
a) criminals                      b) volunteers                      c) bad                      d) ugly
4. We must ..... the historic places around the world.  
a) protect                      b) mix                      c) injure                      d) damage
5. Football games are played at the .....  
a) cinema                      b) zoo                      c) museum                      d) stadium
6. The nurse is a ..... She saved a lot of people.  
a) hero                      b) hello                      c) manager                      d) servant
7. Good students should follow the school .....  
a) rules                      b) lines                      c) ruins                      d) roles
8. He ..... hard for the exam, so he passed it.  
a) studies                      b) doesn't study  
c) studied                      d) didn't study
9. I was revising my lessons when my father ..... in.  
a) is coming                      b) was coming                      c) comes                      d) came
10. People ..... respect each other.  
a) must                      b) must to                      c) mustn't                      d) mustn't to

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You ..... (must) eat inside the castle.
2. I didn't ..... (saw) you yesterday.
3. My grandfather ..... (not/use) have a car.
4. We mustn't ..... (are) late for the exam.
5. Where ..... (do) you use to live when you were 7?

## November Model 3

15

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Tarek and Khaled are discussing where they used to eat.

Tarek : Hi, Khaled. How are you?

Khaled : (1).....

Tarek : Did you use to eat in a restaurant?

Khaled : (2)..... My friend Hani and I used to eat at a famous one.

Tarek : (3).....?

Khaled : Yes, we enjoyed our meal very much.

Tarek : Unfortunately, I didn't eat in a restaurant.

Khaled : (4).....?

Tarek : I used to eat at home with my family! Can we go together next weekend?

Khaled : (5).....

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The person I admire in my family is my grandfather. He was born in 1940. He worked as a doctor. He worked in a big hospital. All people there liked him because he was kind and helpful. I admire him because he did voluntary work and helped people for no money. I like him because he gave me many presents and helped me a lot. He used to help the poor and give them money. He always advised me to help people all the time. When he died last year, people were all sad. He left all his money for poor people and asked us to build a hospital for them.

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "him" refer to?

.....

3. What do you think of the writer's grandfather?

.....



4. The word "admire" means to .....
- a) dislike                                      b) hate  
c) kill    d) love
5. My grandfather advised me to .....
- a) work as a doctor                        b) help people  
c) build a school                             d) be a volunteer
6. My grandfather asked us to build a ..... for poor people.
- a) hospital                      b) charity                      c) bank                      d) library

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. It ..... (didn't) cold yesterday night.
2. His father called him while he ..... (prepare) breakfast.
3. In Ancient Egypt, poor children ..... (not/use) to go to school.
4. I ..... (mustn't) eat less cake or I'll get fat.

**4** Write a paragraph of about **NINETY** (90) words on:

**"A job you like to do"**

[illegible]

## A Vocabulary

## Unit 3

## Key Vocabulary

## المفردات الرئيسية

successful	ناجح	education	التعليم	organisation	منظمة
attack (ed)	يهاجم	emergency	حالة طوارئ	painting	لوحة
blood	دم	firefighter	رجل إطفاء	pump (ed)	مضخة/يضخ
bone	عظمة	heart	القلب	rubbish collector	جامع القمامة
brave	شجاع	heroic	بطولي	scientist	عالم
broken	مكسور	treatment	علاج	serious	خطير/جاد
patron	راع/كفيل	improve (d)	يحسن	shark	سمكة القرش
charity worker	عامل في جمعية خيرية	infect (ed)	يعدى/يصيب	society	مجتمع
charity	جمعية خيرية	infections	عدوى/التهابات	sports coach	مدرب رياضي
confuse (d)	يحتير/يرتبك	jewellery	مجوهرات	statue	تمثال
countryside	الريف	Khedive	الخدوي	stomach	معدة
date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	lungs	الرئتان	street cleaner	منظف الشارع
difference	اختلاف	medicine	دواء	surgeon	جراح
discussion	مناقشة	natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية	the Red Crescent	الهلال الأحمر
earthquake	زلازل	nursing manager	مدير التمريض	volunteer	متطوع

## Language Expressions and Prepositions

## التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

do experiments	يجري تجارب معملية	pay for	يدفع ثمننا
do a project on	يقوم بعمل مشروع في	pleased with	مسرور من
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة	give information	يعطي معلومات
take in air	يستنشق هواء	put first	يضع في المقام الأول
sew cuts	يخيط الجروح	useful for	مفيد لـ
make a hero	يصنع بطلاً	with heart problems	ذو مشاكل في القلب
make a poster	يعد ملصقاً إعلانياً	write down	يدون



## Unit 4

### Key Vocabulary

### المفردات الرئيسية

ancient	أثري/قديم جدًا	mask	قناع	ruler	حاكم
arch	قوس/قنطرة	monuments	أثار	special	خاص/مميز
awesome	رهيب/رائع	mosque	مسجد	stadium	استاد
behave (d)	يتصرف	mosquitos	ناموس/بعوض	statue	تمثال
bowl	سلطانية	national	قومي/وطني	stone circles	الدوائر الحجرية
castle	قلعة	necklace	عقد/قلادة	temple	معبد
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	needle	إبرة/مسلة	theatre	مسرح
clay	طين صلصال	papyrus	ورق/نبات البردي	ticket	تذكرة
coin	عملة معدنية	pharaoh	فرعون	time	عصر/عهد
damage (d)	يضر/يتلف	pot	إناء/وعاء	tool	أداة
debate	مناقشة/مناظرة	pray (ed)	يصلّي	tourism	السباحة
environment	البيئة	protect (ed)	يحمي	valuable	قيم
historic	تاريخي	race	سباق	vase	فازة/زهريّة
ingredients	مكونات/مقادير	recommend (ed)	يرشح/يوصي بـ	view	منظر
injure	يصيب/يؤذي	ring	خاتم	war	حرب
local people	السكان المحليون	ruins	أطلال		

### Language Expressions and Prepositions

### التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

date to	يرجع تاريخه إلى	interested in	مهتم بـ
drop litter	يلقي القمامة	keep away	يبعد
entrance to	مدخل لـ	make pollution	يسبب تلوثاً
excited about	متحمس بخصوص	plan properly	يخطط بشكل مناسب
get a guide	يحصل على مرشد	protect from	يحمي من
go back to	يعود/يرجع إلى	walk up	يصعد
happen to	يحدث لـ	watch out	يحترس من

# PRACTICE

## Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering   ▲ Understanding   ▲ Applying   ▲ Analysing   ▲ Evaluating   ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I always give money to a ..... that helps poor people.  
a) company                      b) building                      c) factory                      d) charity
2. A ..... is an event when people try to get a prize.  
a) scientist                      b) competition                      c) scientist                      d) surgeon
3. The heart ..... blood around the body.  
a) cooks                      b) pumps                      c) takes                      d) gives
4. Anas is a ..... in this hospital. He works for no money.  
a) volunteer                      b) pioneer                      c) charity                      d) teacher
5. Life in the city is more difficult than life in the .....  
a) side                      b) earth                      c) continent                      d) countryside
6. She is interested in ..... She has wonderful paintings.  
a) religion                      b) maths                      c) art                      d) music
7. The good weather ..... for several days so we were able to go out a lot.  
a) continued                      b) explained                      c) saved                      d) kept
8. You mustn't touch the ..... in the museum.  
a) facts                      b) articles                      c) statues                      d) debates
9. I should arrive ..... London tomorrow morning.  
a) of                      b) in                      c) to                      d) at
10. Children must learn how to ..... politely all the time.  
a) treat                      b) behave                      c) do                      d) make
11. We can call something that is ..... when it is very old.  
a) ancient                      b) awesome                      c) patient                      d) amazing
12. You should show your ..... at the entrance.  
a) guide                      b) temple                      c) ticket                      d) rubbish
13. A ..... is a piece of metal used as money.  
a) pot                      b) bowl                      c) can                      d) coin
14. Ancient Egyptians made pots and bowls of ..... from the Nile.  
a) metal                      b) clay                      c) wool                      d) chemical
15. Bread is made ..... flour.  
a) at                      b) into                      c) from                      d) of



## B Language

### Unit 3

#### 1 The past simple tense

##### Form

Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل

Ex: - They played football yesterday. - He bought a new car last year.

##### Usage

- It's used to talk about actions that ended in the past.

تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث في الماضي وانتهى.

- I visited my uncle yesterday.

##### Negative

Subject + did not (didn't) + inf.

Ex: - I did not arrive late yesterday.

- He didn't buy a shirt last week.

##### Question

Did + subject + inf.?

- Did you watch TV last night?

Q. word + did + subject + inf.?

- What time did you go to bed?

##### Key words

yesterday أمس - last ... الماضي ... ago منذ - in the past في الماضي - in + سنة في الماضي (in 2010)

- My father was born in 1980.

- We visited Luxor 2 years ago.

استخدام (when) بمعنى «عندما» مع زمن الماضي البسيط:

- My parents lived in Tanta when they were young.

#### 2 (used to) for regular past habits and routines

##### Form

Subject + used to + inf.

- He used to live in Tanta.

- My grandmother used to work in a hospital.

##### Negative

Subject + didn't + use to + inf.

Ex: - I didn't use to drive a car.

- She didn't use to play tennis.

##### Question

Did + subject + use to + inf.?

- Did she use to live in Cairo?

Q. word + did + subject + use to + inf.?

- What did Sami use to do when he was six?

## Unit 4

### 1 must/mustn't

Subject + must + inf.

- They must **arrive** on time.
- You must **listen** to the teacher.

Subject + mustn't + inf.

- You mustn't **be** late.
- In a museum, you mustn't **touch** the objects.

### Question

Must + subject + inf.?

- Must we **put** rubbish in the bin?

Q. word + must + subject + inf.?

- What must you **do** at school?

### 2 The past continuous tense

### Form

Subject + was/were + v.ing

Ex: - He was **reading** a book.

- They were **swimming**.

### Usage

- It's used to talk about an action that was in progress in a certain time in the past.

يعبر عن شيء كان مستمرًا في وقت محدد في الماضي

- Dina and Hossam were **playing** tennis at 10:30 yesterday.

### Negative

Subject + wasn't/weren't + v.ing

Ex: - I **wasn't** **playing** football.

- They **weren't** **swimming**.

### Question

Was/Were + subject + v.ing?

- Was Kamal **doing** homework?

- Were you **watching** TV?

Q. word + was/were + subject + v.ing?

- When were you **playing** football?

- What was mum **doing** at 3 o'clock yesterday?

### Key words

While/As بينما / When عندما

While/As + past continuous, past simple

Past simple + while/as + past continuous

- While/As I was **reading** my book, the phone **rang**.

When + past simple, past continuous

Past continuous + when + past simple

- When grandfather **arrived**, mum was **cooking**.



# PRACTICE

## Language Exercises

▲ Remembering    ▲ Understanding    ▲ Applying    ▲ Analysing    ▲ Evaluating    ▲ Creating

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We ..... the game last Sunday.  
a) enjoy                      b) enjoying                      c) enjoys                      d) enjoyed
2. .... your brother win the last competition?  
a) Did                      b) Does                      c) Is                      d) Has
3. They ..... very well yesterday. They lost the match.  
a) playing                      b) play                      c) didn't play                      d) played
4. How many goals did your team ..... last match?  
a) scored                      b) score                      c) scoring                      d) scores
5. I ..... a new laptop last week.  
a) buy                      b) buys                      c) buying                      d) bought
6. .... you at school last week?  
a) Do                      b) Are                      c) Were                      d) Did
7. You ..... forget to do your homework regularly.  
a) must to                      b) must                      c) mustn't to                      d) mustn't
8. We ..... follow the road signs to be safe.  
a) have                      b) must                      c) mustn't                      d) has to
9. I ..... in a café when you called me.  
a) was sitting                      b) sitting                      c) sit                      d) sat
10. Sally ..... a cake when I arrived.  
a) make                      b) is making                      c) made                      d) was making
11. You ..... eat or drink at the library.  
a) must                      b) mustn't                      c) have to                      d) haven't
12. When I was younger, I ..... pizza almost every day.  
a) eaten                      b) eat                      c) ate                      d) was eating

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (do) my maths homework yesterday.
2. Did Basmala ..... (went) to England last year?
3. The children ..... (didn't) at home last weekend.
4. You ..... (mustn't) study hard if you want to pass your exams.
5. The phone rang while I ..... (to have) dinner.
6. Were they drinking coffee when you ..... (to arrive)?

## C Skills

### 1. Speaking

#### Unit 3

#### 1. Discussing family history

مناقشة تاريخ العائلة



Where did your parents use to live when they were young?  
أين اعتاد والدك أن يعيش في الماضي؟

They lived in Tanta. اعتادوا أن يعيشوا في طنطا.

Did you use to walk to school? هل اعتدت أن تمشي للمدرسة؟

No. I used to cycle to school. لا، اعتدت أن أذهب بالدراجة.

#### 2. Checking understanding

التأكد من الفهم

Asking for clarification	Clarification
What do you mean? ماذا تعني؟	I mean, ... أنا أعني ...
I'm not sure what you mean. لست متأكدًا مما تعنيه.	In other words, ... بمعنى آخر ...
Sorry, I don't understand. آسف، لا أفهم.	

#### Unit 4

#### Asking for information on the phone

طلب معلومات عبر الهاتف



How can I help you? كيف يمكنني مساعدتك؟

I'd like to know what time the museum is open.

أود معرفة موعد فتح المتحف.

Hello, can you tell me if the museum is open on Fridays?

هل يمكنك أن تخبرني إن كان المتحف مفتوحًا أيام الجمعة؟

Certainly./Of course. It's open daily.

بالأكيد/نعم بالطبع. إنه مفتوح يوميًا.





## 2. Write it right

### Unit 3

#### How to write about someone you are proud of

To : mona@gmail.com

From : sara@gmail.com

Subject : Someone I'm proud of

Hello Mona,

Of all the members in my family, my mother is the person I am proud of. She is 40 years old. She looks much younger than her age with short hair and a beautiful face. She works hard. At work, she is respected by all of her friends. She is a useful person in society. My mother always does the housework well. She is a very good cook. I really admire her for her wonderful dishes. She often spends her free time cooking delicious dishes for us, which makes everyone in my family happy. What's more, my mother is an excellent adviser. I always love her and I will always be proud of her.

Write soon.

Sara

### Unit 4

#### How to write about a historic place you visited

#### A historic place I visited

I visited one of the greatest historic places in India, the Taj Mahal in Agra. I went there with my mum and dad. It is very huge in size. I studied about the Taj Mahal at school, I also saw its pictures. But watching it with my eyes was like a dream that came true. It was built by Shah Jahan around the 1630s. He built it as a gift to his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. This history made it more interesting. It took around 22 years to build. People think that Shah Jahan cut off the hands of the workers who built it so that no similar building could be built. Therefore, this is one of the most awesome historic places.



# Al-Adwaa November Test

on Units 3 & 4

24

## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. What did the Egyptian handball team win?

- a) The Arab Cup.
- b) The English Cup.
- c) The Word Cup.
- d) The Africa Cup.

2. Where was it?

- a) In Sudan.
- b) In Egypt.
- c) In Tunisia.
- d) In the USA.

3. When was it?

- a) In 2005.
- b) In 2010.
- c) In 2020.
- d) In 2000.

4. What was the result?

- a) 27-23.
- b) 25-20.
- c) 15-20.
- d) 17-13.

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A customer is phoning the Egyptian Museum to book a ticket.

**Ticket officer:** Good morning, the Egyptian Museum. How can I help you?

**Customer:** Good morning. (1).....?

**Ticket officer:** Of course. We're open daily from 9:30 to 6:30.

**Customer:** (2).....

**Ticket officer:** Adults are 150 pounds and children under 12 are 75 pounds.

**Customer:** (3).....?

**Ticket officer:** Yes, you can buy them at the museum. Also, you can buy them online.

**Customer:** I'd like to know if I could bring my camera with me.

**Ticket officer:** (4)..... But you mustn't take photos inside the museum.

**Customer:** (5).....



## C Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last year, I had a trip to Petra. The ancient city of Petra is a famous historic place in Jordan. Petra is famous for its tombs, temples and houses which are all pink sandstone. It's called the "Rose City". It was built around 300 BC and was only discovered by the western world in 1812. Petra became a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 1985. It has many high mountains. You can walk for a long way through the old city and the view from some of the higher places is awesome, but you must be careful!

Our guide explained how old the temples are; they are really interesting. I really enjoyed our day there and recommend a visit!

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to? .....
3. What other historic places do you recommend visiting in Egypt?  
.....

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Petra was discovered in .....  
a) 1881                      b) 1218                      c) 1812                      d) 1821
5. The view from the high mountains is .....  
a) nasty                      b) fantastic                      c) terrible                      d) not good
6. The word "Rose" refers to the .....  
a) temples                      b) desert  
c) high mountains                      d) pink colour

## D Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went to the ..... to ask him to leave early today.  
a) collector                      b) officer                      c) worker                      d) manager
2. In swimming pools, water is continuously ..... through a filter.  
a) paid                      b) mended                      c) pumped                      d) breathed
3. .... is the most important thing that our children should be interested in.  
a) Education                      b) Countryside                      c) Disease                      d) Blood

4. Trees can protect us ..... the hot sun.  
a) at                      b) from                      c) for                      d) to
5. There is a front and a back ..... to the house.  
a) castle                      b) temple                      c) entrance                      d) ruler
6. This old castle ..... to the Romans times.  
a) gets                      b) dates                      c) arrives                      d) jumps
7. We must move this ..... very carefully.  
a) statue                      b) view                      c) castle                      d) review
8. Did you ..... the window?  
a) cleaned                      b) cleans                      c) clean                      d) cleaning
9. You ..... be so unkind to your sister.  
a) mustn't                      b) must                      c) mustn't to                      d) must to
10. We ..... English yesterday at 4:00 p.m.  
a) study                      b) studied  
c) are studying                      d) were studying

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. I finished my work and ..... (go) to the beach.
2. I ..... (not/use) wear glasses when I was at university.
3. What ..... (you/do) yesterday evening?
4. The boys were playing in the garden when it suddenly ..... (begin) to rain.



## Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:**

**"A historic place you visited"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Model (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



1. A ..... is a pot used for holding flowers.  
a) necklace      b) mask      c) vase      d) tool
2. The volunteers want to make the river .....  
a) clean      b) bad      c) dirty      d) ugly
3. The streets would be terrible without .....  
a) doctors      b) rubbish collectors  
c) farmers      d) trainers
4. Which sport do you like to .....?  
a) do      b) make      c) stay      d) be
5. In 2020, doctors and nurses helped many ill people when there was a health .....  
a) emerge      b) emergent      c) emergency      d) urgent
6. The Ancient Egyptians made pots and bowls of .....  
a) clay      b) water      c) papyrus      d) metal
7. I really enjoyed our day in the temple of Luxor and recommended a/an ..... to it.  
a) view      b) visit      c) entrance      d) arch
8. Last summer, my family ..... a fantastic holiday in Morocco.  
a) have      b) had      c) has      d) are having
9. While Salma was studying, the light ..... out.  
a) goes      b) went      c) was going      d) is going
10. You ..... touch any of the statues in the museum.  
a) must      b) should      c) mustn't      d) shall

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:



1. Where did your grandparents ..... (used to) live?
2. Did you ..... (saw) the film last week?
3. You must ..... (to revise) well for your exams.
4. My father was born ..... (ago) 1980.
5. Why ..... (did) you sad yesterday?

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Ayman is doing a school project.**

**Samy :** What are you doing?

**Ayman:** (1).....

**Samy :** Do you know a lot about your family history?

**Ayman:** (2).....

**Samy :** (3).....?

**Ayman:** My grandfather used to live in the countryside.

**Samy :** (4).....?

**Ayman:** He was a charity worker at the Red Crescent.

**Samy :** I think he was a good and helpful man.

**Ayman:** (5).....

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. I ..... (send) my friend an email yesterday.

2. Boody ..... (played) football when it rained.

3. In Ancient Egypt, poor children ..... (not/use to) go to school.

4. You ..... (must) eat inside the castle.

5. .... (Does) your uncle use to live in Cairo?

**3 Write an email to your penfriend Ali to tell him about "Your visit to the Pyramids". Your name is Tamer and your email address is tamer@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ali@gmail.com.**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Hossam and Ahmed are talking about street cleaners.**

**Hossam:** What do you think of street cleaners?

**Ahmed :** (1).....

**Hossam:** (2).....?

**Ahmed :** I mean by "heroes" that they do something useful.

**Hossam:** Why do you think so?

**Ahmed :** (3).....

**Hossam:** (4).....?

**Ahmed :** We should encourage them and give them more money.

**Hossam:** But I think money is not enough.

**Ahmed :** (5).....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can see many ancient statues in a .....

- a) hospital      b) museum      c) bank      d) yard

2. The ..... pumps blood around the body.

- a) liver      b) lung      c) heart      d) brain

3. Rubbish and polluted areas cause ..... and diseases for people.

- a) protection      b) infection      c) happiness      d) beauty

4. Last winter, we went to Luxor and visited its beautiful .....

- a) temples      b) houses      c) seas      d) roads

5. Magdy Yacoub is one of the greatest heart ..... in the world.

- a) engineers      b) architects      c) surgeons      d) artists

6. He is under twenty years old. He is a/an ..... player.

- a) senior      b) elder      c) junior      d) old

7. The Grand Egyptian Museum will ..... a lot of tourists from all over the world.

- a) attract      b) stay      c) damage      d) design

8. Salma ..... give money to a charity, but now she does.

- a) used      b) didn't use      c) used to      d) didn't use to

9. While we ..... home, Mohammed phoned me.

- a) were travelling      b) travelling      c) travelled      d) travel

10. You ..... eat or talk at the library.

- a) must      b) mustn't      c) have to      d) haven't

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.  
a) baker                      b) teacher                      c) volunteer                      d) nurse
2. An earthquake is a natural ..... that causes lots of terrible things.  
a) example                      b) opinion                      c) view                      d) disaster
3. In 2016, a shark ..... Omar and he lost a leg.  
a) took                      b) cleaned                      c) attacked                      d) did
4. This football has no air inside. I need a ..... to fill it.  
a) pump                      b) cut                      c) burn                      d) plant
5. There is an important football game at the ..... .  
a) museum                      b) mosque                      c) castle                      d) stadium
6. The nurse is a ..... . She saved a lot of people.  
a) hero                      b) driver                      c) manager                      d) servant
7. Lungs take in air and help us to ..... .  
a) breeze                      b) breath                      c) breathe                      d) freeze
8. Did Wafaa use to ..... French?  
a) study                      b) studied                      c) studying                      d) studies
9. While I ..... out rubbish, my father came.  
a) take                      b) took                      c) was taking                      d) taking
10. You ..... climb on the wall. It's dangerous.  
a) mustn't                      b) must                      c) should                      d) can

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. I ..... (not/use) to like fish when I was young.
2. You mustn't ..... (using) a mobile phone in class.
3. While we were walking into the museum, we ..... (see) some huge statues.
4. Malak used to ride a bike, but now she ..... (isn't).



**1 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

We should all be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but his family travelled to many places as his father was a well known, clever doctor. Magdy also became a doctor like him. Before he stopped working in 2001, he worked in a special hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy helped people to have new hearts for the first time in history. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub built a charity hospital in Aswan for heart **diseases**, especially for children. In the past, children with heart problems used to die after a short period of time, but now many sick children can live healthy lives.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the best title for the passage?.....
2. How did Dr Magdy help people in London? .....
3. Why do you think Dr Magdy Yacoub build the charity hospital? .....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4.** The underlined pronoun "him" refers to ..... .  
**a)** Magdy Yacoub                      **b)** Magdy Yacoub's father  
**c)** Magdy Yacoub's family        **d)** Magdy Yacoub's grandfather
- 5.** The word "**disease**" means ..... .  
**a)** happiness                          **b)** illness  
**c)** sadness                             **d)** careless
- 6.** Since 2009, most of Magdy Yacoub's work has been in ..... .  
**a)** England                      **b)** Aswan                      **c)** Bilbeis                      **d)** Cairo

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Last year, I ..... (go) to Cairo and visited a fantastic museum.
2. You mustn't ..... (smoking) inside the school building.
3. When my mum ..... (be) a child, she used to play the piano every day.
4. My grandfather ..... (not/use) have a car.

### 3 Write a paragraph on:

## "Someone you admire"

.....

.....

.....

## Model (1) Answers

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** vase    2. **a)** clean    3. **b)** rubbish collectors    4. **a)** do    5. **c)** emergency  
6. **a)** clay    7. **b)** visit    8. **b)** had    9. **b)** went    10. **c)** mustn't

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. use to    2. see    3. revise    4. in    5. were

## Model (2) Answers

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm doing a school project.    2. Yes, sure.  
3. Where did your grandfather use to live?  
4. What did he use to do when he was young?  
5. Sure. I agree with you.

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. sent    2. was playing    3. didn't use to    4. mustn't    5. Did

### 3 Write an email:

**To:** ali@gmail.com

**From:** tamer@gmail.com

**Subject:** My visit to the Pyramids

Dear Ali,

I hope you are fine. I would like to tell you about my visit to the Pyramids. As you know, I'm interested in historical places and the history of Egypt. My dad invited us to go on a trip to the Pyramids, and I felt really excited. We went there last Friday. We learned a lot of things about history. I enjoyed a lot. We had a lot of fun.

**Write back soon**

**Tamer**

## Model (3) Answers

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

1. I think they are heroes.  
2. What do you mean by "heroes"?  
3. Because they make our streets clean.  
4. How should we encourage them?  
5. I know it is not enough, but something is better than nothing.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** museum    2. **c)** heart    3. **b)** infection    4. **a)** temples  
5. **c)** surgeons    6. **c)** junior    7. **a)** attract    8. **d)** didn't use to  
9. **a)** were travelling    10. **b)** mustn't



## Model (4) Answers

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** volunteer      2. **d)** disaster      3. **c)** attacked      4. **a)** pump  
5. **d)** stadium      6. **a)** hero      7. **c)** breathe      8. **a)** study  
9. **c)** was taking      10. **a)** mustn't

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. didn't use to      2. use      3. saw      4. go      5. doesn't

## Model (5) Answers

### 1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. Dr Magdy Yacoub.
2. He helped people to have new hearts for the first time in history.
3. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub built a charity hospital in Aswan for heart diseases especially for children.

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. **b)** Magdy Yacoub's father      5. **b)** illness      6. **b)**

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. went      2. smoke      3. was      4. didn't use to

### 3 Write a paragraph on:

#### "Someone you admire"

The person I admire is my grandfather. He was born in 1940. He worked as a doctor. He worked in a big hospital. All people there liked him because he was kind and helpful. I admire him because he did voluntary work and helped people for no money. I like him because he gave me many presents and helped me a lot. He used to help the poor and give them money. He always advised me to help people at all times. When he died last year, people were all sad. He left all his money for poor people and asked us to build a hospital for them. I'm really proud of him.

## ① Complete the following dialogue:

**Fadi and Nadi are talking about street cleaners.**

**Fadi** : What do you think of street cleaners?

**Nadi** : (1).....

**Fadi** : (2).....?

**Nadi** : I mean by "heroes" that they do something useful.

**Fadi** : Why do you think so?

**Nadi** : (3).....

**Fadi** : (4).....?

**Nadi** : We should encourage them and give them more money.

**Fadi** : But I think money is not enough.

**Nadi** : (5).....

## ② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Pots and bowls were made of the ..... from the River Nile by the Ancient Egyptians.

a) plastic

b) gold

c) wood

d) clay

2. The ..... pumps blood around the body.

a) liver

b) lung

c) heart

d) brain

3. Rubbish and polluted areas cause ..... and diseases for people.

a) protection

b) infection

c) happiness

d) beauty

4. Last winter, we went to Luxor and visited its beautiful .....

a) temples

b) houses

c) seas

d) roads



5. Magdy Yacoub is one of the greatest heart ..... in the world.

a) engineers

b) architects

c) surgeons

d) artists

6. He is under twenty years old. He is a/an ..... player.

a) senior

b) elder

c) junior

d) old

7. The Grand Egyptian ..... will attract a lot of tourists from all over the world.

a) Temple

b) Museum

c) Castle

d) Statue

8. Dina ..... give money to a charity, but now she does.

a) used

b) didn't use

c) used to

d) didn't use to

9. While we ..... home, Abbas phoned me.

a) were travelling

b) travelling

c) travelled

d) travel

10. You ..... eat or talk at the library.

a) must

b) mustn't

c) have to

d) haven't

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. I ..... (send) my friend an email yesterday.

2. I ..... (played) football when it rained.

3. In Ancient Egypt, poor children ..... (not/use to) go to school.

4. You ..... (must) eat inside the castle.

5. .... (Does) your uncle use to live in Cairo?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.  
a) baker                      b) teacher                      c) volunteer                      d) nurse
2. An earthquake is a natural ..... that causes lots of terrible things.  
a) example                      b) opinion                      c) view                      d) disaster
3. In 2016, a shark ..... Omar and he lost a leg.  
a) took                      b) cleaned                      c) attacked                      d) did
4. This football has no air inside. I need a ..... to fill it.  
a) pump                      b) cut                      c) burn                      d) plant
5. There is an important football game at the .....  
a) museum                      b) mosque                      c) castle                      d) stadium
6. The nurse is a ..... She saved a lot of people.  
a) hero                      b) driver                      c) manager                      d) servant
7. Lungs take in air and help us to .....  
a) breeze                      b) breath                      c) breathe                      d) freeze
8. Did he use to ..... French?  
a) study                      b) studied                      c) studying                      d) studies
9. While I ..... out rubbish, my father came.  
a) take                      b) took                      c) was taking                      d) taking
10. You ..... climb on the wall. It's dangerous.  
a) mustn't                      b) must                      c) should                      d) can

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (not/use) to like fish when I was young.
2. You mustn't ..... (using) a mobile phone in class.
3. While we were walking into the museum, we ..... (see) some huge statues.
4. Did Noha ..... (went) home?

3 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Someone you are admire"

.....

.....

.....



**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

5

**Ayman is doing a school project.****Samy** : What are you doing?**Ayman** : (1).....**Samy** : Do you know a lot about your family history?**Ayman** : (2).....**Samy** : (3).....?**Ayman** : My grandfather used to live in the countryside.**Samy** : (4).....?**Ayman** : He was a charity worker at the Red Crescent.**Samy** : I think he was a good and helpful man.**Ayman** : (5).....**2 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

6

We should all be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but his family travelled to many places as his father was a well known, clever doctor. Magdy also became a doctor like him. Before he stopped working in 2001, he worked in a special hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy helped people to have new hearts for the first time in history. Before the 1980s, people who suffer from heart problems often used to die. All heart surgeries cost huge amounts of money and need clever doctors to be performed. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub built a charity hospital in Aswan for heart diseases especially for children. In the past, children with heart problems used to die after a short period of time, but now many sick children can live healthy lives.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the best title for the passage?

.....

2. How did Dr Magdy help people in London?

.....

3. Why do you think Dr Magdy Yacoub build the charity hospital?

.....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined "him" refers to .....

a) Magdy Yacoub

b) Magdy Yacoub's father

c) Magdy Yacoub's family

d) Magdy Yacoub's grandfather

5. The underlined word "suffer" means .....

a) hear

b) have the courage

c) have sickness

d) feel

6. Since 2009, most of Magdy Yacoub's work has been in .....

a) England

b) Aswan

c) Bilbeis

d) Cairo

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Last year, I ..... (go) to Cairo and visited a fantastic museum.

2. You mustn't ..... (smoking) inside the school building.

3. When my mum ..... (be) a child, she used to play the piano every day.

4. My grandfather ..... (not/use) have a car.



## Model (1) Answers

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

1. I think they are heroes.
2. What do you mean by "heroes"?
3. Because they make our streets clean.
4. How should we encourage them?
5. I know it is not enough, but something is better than nothing.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- |                              |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <b>d)</b> clay            | 2. <b>c)</b> heart         |
| 3. <b>b)</b> infection       | 4. <b>a)</b> temples       |
| 5. <b>c)</b> surgeons        | 6. <b>c)</b> junior        |
| 7. <b>b)</b> museum          | 8. <b>d)</b> didn't use to |
| 9. <b>a)</b> were travelling | 10. <b>b)</b> mustn't      |

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. sent
2. was playing
3. didn't use to
4. mustn't
5. Did

## Model (2) Answers

### ① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. c) volunteer  | 2. d) disaster |
| 3. c) attacked   | 4. a) pump     |
| 5. d) stadium    | 6. a) hero     |
| 7. c) breathe    | 8. a) study    |
| 9. c) was taking | 10. a) mustn't |

### ② Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. didn't use to
2. use
3. saw
4. go

### ③ Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

#### **"Someone you are admire"**

The person I admire is my grandfather. He was born in 1940. He worked as a doctor. He worked in a big hospital. All people there liked him because he was kind and helpful. I admire him because he did voluntary work and helped people for no money. I like him because he gave me many presents and helped me a lot. He used to help the poor and give them money. He always advised me to help people all the times. When he died last year, people were all sad. He left all his money for poor people and asked us to build a hospital for them. I'm really proud of him.



## Model (3) Answers

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm doing a school project.
2. Yes, sure.
3. Where did your grandfather use to live?
4. What did he use to do when he was young?
5. Sure. I agree with you.

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. Dr Magdy Yacoub.
2. He helped people to have new hearts for the first time in history.
3. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub built a charity hospital in Aswan for heart diseases especially for children.

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. **b)** Magdy Yacoub's father
5. **c)** have sickness
6. **b)** Aswan

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. went
2. smoke
3. was
4. didn't use to



cut	جرح	emergency	حالة طوارئ	handball	كرة اليد
female	أنثى	infection	عدوى	competition	بطولة / منافسة
hero	بطل	lungs	الرئتين	championship	بطولة
heroic	بطولي	patron	كفيل / ممول	sports coach	مدرب رياضي
junior	ناشئ	surgeon	جراح	natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية
senior	أكبر سناً	volunteer	متطوع	pump	يضخ / منفاخ
win	يفوز	charity	جمعية خيرية	scared	خائف
proud	فخور	manager	مدير	scientist	عالم

## Other Words

nuclear	نووي	charity worker	عامل خيري	brave	شجاع
treatment	علاج	heart problems	مشاكل بالقلب	nervous	عصبي
technology	تكنولوجيا	Foundation	مؤسسة	patient	صبور / مريض
primary	ابتدائي	organisation	منظمة	successful	ناجح
preparatory	اعدادي	nation	أمة	expert	خبير
shark	قرش	medicine	طب / دواء	serious	خطير / جاد
final	نهائي	cancer	سرطان	dangerous	خطير
World Cup	كأس العالم	disease	مرض	necessary	ضروري
prize	جائزة	the Red Crescent	الهلال الأحمر	ancient	قديم
event	حدث	earthquake	زلازل	special	مميز
goal	هدف	jewellery	مجوهرات	stomach	معدة
burns	حروق	function	وظيفة	bones	عظام
culture	ثقافة	discussion	مناقشة	marks	درجات
furniture	أثاث	rubbish collector	جامع القمامة	habit	عادة
brain	مخ	cleaner	عامل نظافة	society	مجتمع
blood	دم	education	تعليم	reason	سبب

## Verbs

attack- ed	يهاجم	improve- d	يحسن	lose- lost - lost	يفقد
check- ed	يراجع	score- d	يسجل	throw- threw - thrown	يرمي
discuss- ed	يناقش	include- d	يشمل	mean - meant - meant	يعني
confuse- d	يحيّر	explain- ed	يشرح	find - found - found	يجد

## Definitions

cut	جرح	an injury when something cuts you, made by something sharp
female	أنثى	being a woman or a girl



<b>emergency</b>	حالة طوارئ	when something dangerous and serious (an accident or a fire) happens suddenly
<b>natural disaster</b>	كارثة طبيعية	something that happens in nature and causes a lot of damage, for example a flood فيضان or an earthquake
<b>hero</b>	بطل	a person that people admire because they have done something very brave or good
<b>infection</b>	عدوى	a disease in a part of your body
<b>junior</b>	ناشئ	connected with young people or involving young people
<b>senior</b>	أكبر سناً	more advanced and/or older
<b>lungs</b>	رئتين	parts of the body inside the chest that we use to breathe
<b>manager</b>	مدير	a person who organises people in a company or business
<b>charity</b>	جمعية خيرية	an organisation that gives money , food , etc. to people who are <b>in need</b> المحتاجين
<b>scientist</b>	عالم	someone who studies and works in science
<b>patron</b>	كفيل / راعي	a person who gives money to help people or places
<b>scared</b>	خائف	frightened or afraid that something bad could happen
<b>surgeon</b>	جراح	a special doctor who knows how to look inside a person's body to help people who are ill

## Language Notes

was born <b>in</b> + مكان / عام	ولد في / عام	died <b>in</b> + عام	مات عام ...
was born <b>into</b> a rich family	ولد لعائلة غنية	know <b>about</b>	يعرف عن
people <b>with</b> heart problems	لديهم مشاكل في القلب	talk <b>about</b>	يتحدث عن
<b>lost</b> a leg/ an arm	فقد ساق / ذراع	look <b>inside</b>	ينظر داخل
<b>stop</b> + v.ing	يتوقف عن فعل شئ	look <b>after</b>	يعتني بـ
<b>get</b> a prize	يحصل على جائزة	moved <b>to</b> ...	انتقل إلى
<b>get</b> a job	يحصل على وظيفة	<b>for</b> + مدة زمنية	لمدة
<b>get</b> married	يتزوج	<b>ago</b> + مدة زمنية	منذ ...
<b>do</b> experiments	يقوم بتجارب معملية	work <b>for</b> no money	يعمل بلا مقابل
work <b>as</b> a/ an + وظيفة	يعمل كـ ...	pay <b>for</b>	يدفع مقابل
<b>try</b> his best	يبذل قصارى جهده	pleased <b>with</b>	مسرور من
<b>mend</b> broken bones	يصلح كسور العظام	fell <b>off</b>	سقط من على
<b>has/with</b> an eye <b>infection</b>	لديه عدوى بالعين	give money <b>to</b>	يعطي نقود لـ
<b>do</b> a school project <b>on</b> ...	يعمل بحث مدرسي عن	would like <b>to</b> + مصدر	يريد أن ...
<b>do</b> something <b>about</b>	يعمل شئ تجاه	want <b>to</b> + مصدر	يريد أن ...
<b>enjoy</b> + v.ing	يستمتع	filled <b>with</b>	مملوء بـ



pass his exams	ينجح في امتحاناته	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
proud of + اسم / v.ing	فخور بـ	on TV	في التلفاز
proud to + مصدر	فخور أن أفعل ..	agree with	يتفق مع
keep cities clean	يحافظ على نظافة المدن	scared of	خائف من
do difficult things	يقوم بأشياء صعبة	sew cuts	يخيط الجروح

Confusing Words كلمات محيرة			
too	أيضا	to	إلى / أن / إلا
know	يعرف	no	لا
its	صفة ملكية للمفرد غير العاقل	It's = ( it is / it has )	انه يكون / يمتلك
their	صفة ملكية للجمع	there	هناك / يوجد
than	(أكثر / أقل) من - للمقارنة	then	ثم

Checking understanding التأكد من فهم شيء			
What do you mean?	ماذا تقصد / تعني؟	I mean ...	أعني ...
I'm not sure what you mean.	لست متأكدا مما تقصده	In other words ...	بمعنى آخر ...
Sorry, I don't understand.	أسف لم أفهم	That's true.	هذا صحيح
		I understand.	أفهم

## Exercises

### 1. Complete the dialogue: Omar is talking to Ali about rubbish collectors.

Omar : I think rubbish collectors can be heroes.

Ali : ① ..... ?

Omar : I mean we need rubbish collectors.

Ali : Sorry, ② .....

Omar : I mean they do something very useful. The city would be terrible without them!

Ali : ③ ..... What about street cleaners?

Omar : ④ ..... What do you mean?

Ali : I mean, street cleaners are also important.

Omar : Yes, that's true! They help to keep our cities clean.

Ali : ⑤ ..... !

### 2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### SB/WB Exercises

1. A ..... teaches people how to play or improve a sport.

a. scientist      b. surgeon      c. sports coach      d. charity worker

2. The mountain was very high and we all felt ..... at the top because we thought we might fall!

a. scare      b. scared      c. happy      d. pity



3. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.  
 a. **patron**      b. **surgeon**      c. **sports coach**      d. **charity worker**
4. A ..... does experiments to study and find out about how things work.  
 a. **scientist**      b. **surgeon**      c. **sports coach**      d. **worker**
5. A ..... gives money to people or places.  
 a. **scientist**      b. **surgeon**      c. **sports coach**      d. **patron**
6. A ..... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home.  
 a. **disaster**      b. **charity**      c. **school**      d. **countryside**
7. The ..... is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature.  
 a. **bank**      b. **town**      c. **countryside**      d. **lake**
8. A terrible event, such as an earthquake, is a .....  
 a. **volunteer**      b. **charity**      c. **natural disaster**      d. **countryside**
9. A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.  
 a. **charity**      b. **volunteer**      c. **surgeon**      d. **disaster**
10. If you are ..... of someone, you feel pleased with them. This is because you think they are or have done something very good.  
 a. **worried**      b. **bored**      c. **sad**      d. **proud**
11. An ..... is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about.  
 a. **event**      b. **organisation**      c. **emergency**      d. **party**
12. This football has no air inside it. I need a ..... to fill it.  
 a. **bomb**      b. **pump**      c. **plant**      d. **garden**
13. Adam fell off his bike and has a big ..... on his arm.  
 a. **pump**      b. **infect**      c. **hurt**      d. **cut**
14. Lina's cousin is in hospital with an eye .....  
 a. **hurt**      b. **infect**      c. **infection**      d. **event**
15. You should ..... those tomato plants in the garden.  
 a. **plant**      b. **make**      c. **get**      d. **talk**
16. Dirty water from a river can ..... you if you drink it.  
 a. **help**      b. **infect**      c. **cut**      d. **pump**
17. .... the meat into small pieces before you cook it.  
 a. **Cut**      b. **Share**      c. **Plant**      d. **Throw**
18. My grandmother was born in 1955 and my ..... was born in 1930!  
 a. **mother**      b. **sister**      c. **great-grandmother**      d. **aunt**
19. When you are older, do you want to live in the city or the ..... ?  
 a. **charity**      b. **town**      c. **countryside**      d. **lake**
20. You can only open this door in a/an ..... such as a fire.  
 a. **party**      b. **event**      c. **emergency**      d. **organisation**
21. The earthquake was the second ..... in the city this year.  
 a. **charity**      b. **natural disaster**      c. **countryside**      d. **volunteer**
22. I always give money to a/an ..... that helps poor children.  
 a. **charity**      b. **hotel**      c. **bank**      d. **school**
23. Are you taller ..... your brother?  
 a. **then**      b. **than**      c. **that**      d. **this**

24. I don't think I ..... the answer to this question.

a. no

b. know

c. now

d. new

25. We went to my cousin's house this morning, but nobody was .....

a. there

b. than

c. that

d. their

26. Warda is good at maths, and she's good at English, .....

a. two

b. to

c. too

d. toe

27. I bought ..... books yesterday.

a. two

b. to

c. too

d. toe

28. Athens is a great city and the Parthenon is ..... most famous building.

a. at

b. it

c. its

d. it's

29. Scientists do many experiments to find ..... for many illnesses.

طوخ ٢٠٢٣

a. treatments

b. developments

c. moments

d. monuments

30. Teachers try their ..... to make us good people.

شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣

a. mist

b. fist

c. list

d. best

31. I ..... a prize for running last month.

شرق الزقازيق

٢٠٢٣

a. gave

b. got

c. saw

d. made

32. A player should practice more to ..... his skills.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a. lose

b. improve

c. make

d. take

## Grammar

### The Past Simple Tense

### زمن الماضي البسيط

◀ يعبر عن شيء بدأ و انتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي أو عادة في الماضي و يستخدم مع الكلمات الآتية:

في عام (2010) سنة + in / في الماضي in the past / أمس Yesterday  
(مدة) + ago منذ / Last (week / month / year ... )

▶ I **went** to school by car yesterday.

▶ I always **played** football when I was young.

◀ يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل مع كل الضمائر و ينقسم إلى ... .

✱ أفعال منتظمة: تنتهي بـ (d/ ed/ ied) مثل:

play → **played**

like → **liked**

study → **studied**

stop → **stopped**

✱ أفعال شاذة: مثل:

eat → **ate**

go → **went**

◀ للنفي ( S. + didn't + inf. )

▶ I **didn't walk** to school yesterday.

- الاستفهام:

? مصدر الفعل + فاعل + **did** + كلمة استفهام -

▶ What **did** you **do** yesterday?



- إذا بدأ السؤال بـ **Did** تكون الإجابة بـ **Yes / No**

► **Did** you play football yesterday?

Yes, I **did**.

or

No, I **didn't**.

## used to

## اعتاد على

نستخدم **used to** للتعبير عن أشياء اعتاد الشخص القيام بها في الماضي ولكنه لا يفعلها الآن.

**فعل مصدر + used to + inf. + فاعل**

► My father **used to work** in a bank, but now he works in an office.

**فعل مصدر + didn't use to + inf.**

للتنفي

► I **didn't use to like** salad when I was younger, but now I love it.

**فعل مصدر + use to + inf. + فاعل + Did ?**

► **Did** you **use to eat** ice cream when you were young?

Yes, I did.

Or

No, I didn't.

**فعل مصدر + use to + inf. + فاعل + did + أداة استفهام**

► What cartoon **did you use to** watch when you were young?

I **used to watch** Tom and Jerry.

## Exercises

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB/WB Exercises

1. I ..... to primary school for 6 years.

a. **go**

b. **went**

c. **gone**

d. **going**

2. I ..... preparatory school two years ago.

a. **starts**

b. **starting**

c. **started**

d. **start**

3. When I was 12, I ..... to Hurghada.

a. **travelled**

b. **travel**

c. **travels**

d. **travelling**

4. We ..... English from 9 to 9.45 yesterday.

a. **has**

b. **had**

c. **have**

d. **having**

5. My Uncle Rashid ..... born in 1961.

a. **is**

b. **was**

c. **were**

d. **are**

6. He ..... playing chess when he was very little.  
a. **starts**                      b. **starting**                      c. **started**                      d. **start**
7. He ..... a junior chess competition when he was only 12!  
a. **wins**                      b. **winning**                      c. **won**                      d. **is winning**
8. He ..... aunt Reem when he was 20 and they got married in 1983.  
a. **meet**                      b. **met**                      c. **meeting**                      d. **meets**
9. In 1990, he ..... the number one chess player in our city.  
a. **becomes**                      b. **becoming**                      c. **became**                      d. **become**
10. Yasser's grandmother ..... work in a hospital in the past.  
a. **uses to**                      b. **used**                      c. **used to**                      d. **using to**
11. Before he got married, Yasser's dad ..... live in Cairo.  
a. **didn't use to**                      b. **didn't used**                      c. **used not**                      d. **not use to**
12. Yasser's uncle used to ..... in Tunisia.  
a. **lived**                      b. **lives**                      c. **living**                      d. **live**
13. When she was a child, Yasser's Mum didn't ..... play the piano every day.  
a. **use to**                      b. **used**                      c. **used to**                      d. **using to**
14. Before he had children, Yasser's grandfather ..... know how to drive a car.  
a. **didn't use to**                      b. **didn't used**                      c. **used not**                      d. **not use to**
15. My uncle ..... be a firefighter, but now he is a police officer.  
a. **used**                      b. **used to**                      c. **use**                      d. **using**
16. Last year, I ..... to Cairo and visited a fantastic museum.  
a. **go**                      b. **went**                      c. **going**                      d. **gone**
17. Dina ..... use to give money to a charity, but now she does.  
a. **doesn't**                      b. **don't**                      c. **didn't**                      d. **isn't**
18. Did you ..... the film about the earthquake on TV last night?  
a. **saw**                      b. **see**                      c. **sees**                      d. **seeing**
19. Did Hossam Hassan use to ..... captain of the Egyptian Football team?  
a. **being**                      b. **did**                      c. **be**                      d. **was**
20. Nour El Sherbini ..... the World Squash Championships in 2020.  
a. **won**                      b. **winning**                      c. **wins**                      d. **win**
21. My grandfather ..... football when he was young, but he can't walk now.  
a. **play**                      b. **used to play**                      c. **use to play**                      d. **plays**
22. Did Ali ..... to the shops yesterday?  
a. **go**                      b. **went**                      c. **used to go**                      d. **goes**
23. There ..... a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three.  
a. **weren't**                      b. **didn't**                      c. **didn't use to be**                      d. **isn't**
24. Where ..... live, before you moved to Alexandria?  
a. **are you**                      b. **do you**                      c. **did you use to**                      d. **you used to**
25. Egypt's football team ..... the Africa Cup of Nations in 2010.  
a. **win**                      b. **won**                      c. **used to win**                      d. **use to win**



## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

### SB/WB Exercises

- When ..... (be) you born? - I was born in 2007.
- Where ..... (do) you go when you were at primary school?
- Did you ..... (walked) to primary school?
- Who ..... (be) your best friend at primary school?
- When did you ..... (started) learning English?
- When you were ten, did you ..... (used to) live in a different house?
- ..... (Do) you use to have any different hobbies when you were ten?
- Did you use to ..... (rode) a bike to school?
- When you were ten, did you use ..... (at) have the same friends?
- Sahar ..... (enjoy) her last holiday in Hurghada.

### تدريبات من الادارات التعليمية

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My father always ..... basketball when he was young. (بليبس ٢٠٢٢)  
a. **playing**                      b. **played**                      c. **play**                      d. **plays**
- Some people are scared ..... dogs. (بليبس ٢٠٢٢)  
a. **of**                      b. **for**                      c. **about**                      d. **from**
- Basem ..... at school yesterday. (طلخا ٢٠٢٢)  
a. **didn't**                      b. **wasn't**                      c. **isn't**                      d. **doesn't**
- In 2016, a shark ..... Omar and he lost his leg. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)  
a. **is attacking**                      b. **attacking**                      c. **attacked**                      d. **attack**
- Sara used to be lazy, but now she ..... (أبو التمرس ٢٠٢٢)  
a. **does**                      b. **didn't**                      c. **doesn't**                      d. **isn't**
- I used to play football but now I ..... (غرب شبرا ٢٠٢٢)  
a. **didn't**                      b. **doesn't**                      c. **am not**                      d. **don't**

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- He ..... (meet) his aunt two weeks ago. (بليبس ٢٠٢٢)
- I ..... (sleep) in a tent last night. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
- Youssef didn't ..... (found) his lost book. (قها ٢٠٢٢)
- I ..... (not used) to cry a lot when I was a child. (المرج ٢٠٢٢)
- I ..... (use) to play basketball, but now I don't. (حلوان ٢٠٢٢)
- Where ..... (do) Ahmad use to live? (غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢)
- I ..... (not used) to run fast. (البدرشين ٢٠٢٢)
- Why did your parents ..... (used) to study hard? (شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٢)

## Vocabulary

## Key Words



company	شركة	figure	شكل / شخصية	tool	أداة
clay	صلصال / فخار	historic	تاريخي	touch- ed	يلمس
coin	عملة معدنية	mask	قناع	vase	زهريّة ورد
damage	يتلف	papyrus	ورق البردي	awesome	مدهش / رائع
debate	مناقشة / مناظرة	ruins	حطام / آثار	view	منظر
design	تصميم	Senet	لعبة قديمة	guide	مرشد

## Other Words

stadium	استاد / ملعب	Romans	الرومان	necessary	ضروري
castle	قلعة	entrance	مدخل	interesting	شيق
mosque	مسجد	ticket	تذكرة	strong	قوي
pyramid	هرم	bin	سلة مهملات	national	وطني / قومي
statue	تمثال	ticket office	مكتب تذاكر	adult	بالغ
temple	معبد	web page	صفحة نت	customer	زبون
theatre	مسرح	magazine	مجلة	clerk	موظف
stones	أحجار	objects	أشياء	ingredients	مكونات
building	مبنى	pot	إناء	Certainly	بالتأكيد
race	سباق	bowl	وعاء / سلطانية	paint	دهان / طلاء
hill	تل	ring	خاتم	insects	حشرات
picnic	نزهة	necklace	عقد	huge	ضخم
walls	حوائط / أسوار	equipment	معدات	popular	شائع
arch	قنطرة	chemical	مادة كيميائية	tourism	سياحة
area	منطقة	mosquitos	بعوض / ناموس	cultural	ثقافي
ruler	حاكم	environment	بيئة	dice	زهر / نرد
century	قرن	pollution	تلوث	needle	إبرة / مسلة
storm	عاصفة	local people	السكان المحليين	report	تقرير

## Verbs

behave- d	يتصرف	recommend- ed	يوصي	cost - cost - cost	يتكلف
pray- ed	يصلي	protect- ed	يحمي	ring - rang - rung	يرن
enter- ed	يدخل	explain- ed	يفسر	hold - held - held	يمسك
follow- ed	يتبع	decide- d	يقرر	wear - wore - worn	يرتدي
injure- d	يصيب	weigh- ed	يزن	sink - sank - sunk	يغرق

## Words and Definitions

company	شركة	a business that makes money by producing or selling things
---------	------	--



<b>clay</b>	صلصال / فخار	a type of mud (earth and water). It's soft when wet, but becomes hard when it's dry. We can make things with it
<b>design</b>	تصميم	a pattern used to decorate something
<b>coin</b>	عملة معدنية	a small, flat piece of metal, usually round in shape that we use as money
<b>debate</b>	مناظرة / مناقشة	when different people with different ideas talk about a subject
<b>figure</b>	شخصية	a picture or model of someone
<b>historic</b>	تاريخي	connected with history or with the past
<b>mask</b>	قناع	something that you wear to cover part or all of your face
<b>papyrus</b>	ورق البردي	a type of paper made from plants that was used in ancient Egypt
<b>ruins</b>	حطام / اثار	the broken parts that are left of a building or city
<b>Senet</b>	لعبة قديمة	an Ancient' Egyptian game
<b>tool</b>	أداة	an instrument that you hold in your hand and use for making or repairing things
<b>awesome</b>	مدهش / رائع	very good , great ( informal English )
<b>arch</b>	قنطرة	a curved ( half circle ) part of buildings

### Language Notes

arrive <b>at</b> + مكان صغير	يصل إلى	go <b>in / into</b>	يدخل
arrive <b>in</b> + مكان كبير	يصل إلى	a day <b>out</b>	يوم خارج المنزل
<b>reach</b> + مكان	يصل إلى	<b>on</b> time	في الوقت المحدد
<b>in</b> the south (of)	في الجنوب / جنوب	<b>on</b> a hill	على التل
date back <b>to</b> + زمن	يرجع تاريخه إلى	take <b>off</b>	يخلع ملابس
interested <b>in</b> + v.ing/ n.	مهتم بـ	popular <b>in</b>	شائع في (مكان)
travel <b>on</b> the train	يسافر بالقطار	popular <b>with</b>	شائع لدى (أشخاص)
travel <b>by</b> train	يسافر بالقطار	good <b>for</b>	مفيد لـ
drive <b>on</b> the road	يقود سيارة على الطريق	bad <b>for</b>	ضار لـ
stay <b>on</b> the road	يبقى على الطريق	sink <b>in</b> a storm	يغرق في عاصفة
children <b>under</b> 12	الاطفال تحت ١٢ سنة	Let me + مصدر	دعني ...
use + شئ + <b>for</b> + v.ing	يستخدم شئ من أجل ...	go <b>for</b> a walk	يتمشي
use + شئ + <b>to</b> + مصدر	يستخدم شئ لكي ...	<b>around</b> the world	حول العالم
buy tickets <b>online</b>	يشترى التذاكر عبر الانترنت	made <b>of</b> + مادة خام	مصنوع من
<b>have</b> a class debate	لدي نقاش في الفصل	keep <b>away</b>	يبتعد
pay <b>for</b> + v.ing / اسم	يدفع مقابل	find <b>out</b>	يكتشف
climb <b>on</b> the wall	يتسلق الأسوار	bring money <b>to</b> ...	يجلب المال لـ ..



### Asking for information on the telephone طلب معلومات على الهاتف

How can I help you?	كيف أستطيع مساعدتك؟
Hello, can you tell me...?	مرحباً ، هل يمكنك أن تخبرني ... ؟
Certainly. / Of course. It's ..	بالتأكيد. بالطبع ، انها ...
I'd like to know what time...	أريد أن أعرف في أي وقت ...
Can I buy ...?	هل يمكن أن أشتري ... ؟
Thank you for your help.	شكراً على مساعدتك

### Agreeing and disagreeing الاتفاق و المعارضة في الرأي

I don't agree	لا اتفق	I see what you mean	أفهم ما تقصده
I don't think so	لا اعتقد ذلك	Maybe	ربما
I think it is	اعتقد أنها	I agree with you	أتفق معك

## Exercises

### 1. Complete the dialogue: *Nader is talking to a tourist.*

Nader : It's nice to meet you.

Tourist : ① .....

Nader : ② .....

Tourist : I'm from Britain.

Nader : ③ .....

Tourist : Yes, it is my first time here in Egypt.

Nader : Where are you staying now?

Tourist : ④ .....

Nader : What do you think of Egypt?

Tourist : ⑤ .....

### 2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: *SB/WB Exercises*

1. You can watch a sports match in a/an .....

a. theatre                      b. cinema                      c. stadium                      d. hotel

2. A/ An ..... can be an entrance to another place.

a. arch                      b. mosque                      c. castle                      d. statue

3. We usually pray at a/an .....

a. arch                      b. mosque                      c. castle                      d. statue

4. A/ An ..... usually has very strong walls.

a. castle                      b. cinema                      c. stadium                      d. hotel

5. We can see a/an ..... in a museum.

a. theatre                      b. mosque                      c. castle                      d. statue

6. .... are not a complete building.

a. Ruins                      b. Buildings                      c. Museums                      d. Stadiums



7. There are more than 2,000 ..... in the museum.  
 a. **objects**                      b. **parts**                      c. **mixers**                      d. **ingredients**
8. This chemical helps to keep ..... mosquitos.  
 a. **away**                      b. **with**                      c. **by**                      d. **up**
9. The black and white ..... around this window are beautiful.  
 a. **painting**                      b. **jewellery**                      c. **designs**                      d. **mirror**
10. These bowls are made of .....  
 a. **cloth**                      b. **oil**                      c. **wood**                      d. **clay**
11. Bees and ants are important .....  
 a. **birds**                      b. **insects**                      c. **animals**                      d. **sea animals**
12. Ali's uncle works for a big oil ..... in the United Arab Emirates.  
 a. **work**                      b. **company**                      c. **job**                      d. **school**
13. I love going to ..... places such as museums and ancient ruins.  
 a. **historic**                      b. **culture**                      c. **history**                      d. **tradition**
14. Don't play football here or you might ..... that car.  
 a. **hurt**                      b. **injure**                      c. **damage**                      d. **help**
15. .... it will rain tomorrow, but I'm not sure.  
 a. **Maybe**                      b. **May**                      c. **Might**                      d. **think**
16. Ancient Egyptians made pots of ..... from the Nile.  
 a. **water**                      b. **flowers**                      c. **clay**                      d. **wood**
17. .... was used for writing in ancient Egypt.  
 a. **Paper**                      b. **Wool**                      c. **Wood**                      d. **Papyrus**
18. We wear sunglasses to ..... us from the sun.  
 a. **protect**                      b. **infect**                      c. **pay**                      d. **accept**
19. There are a lot of ..... in the supermarket today. It's very crowded.  
 a. **sailors**                      b. **customers**                      c. **objects**                      d. **crafts**
20. My mobile phone ..... me a lot of money. It was 5,000 pounds.  
 a. **paid**                      b. **gave**                      c. **cost**                      d. **left**
21. A/An ..... is a model of a person.  
 a. **castle**                      b. **figure**                      c. **coin**                      d. **tool**
22. A/An ..... is a period of 100 years.  
 a. **decade**                      b. **debate**                      c. **century**                      d. **week**
23. Tourism is good ..... our country.  
 a. **for**                      b. **after**                      c. **at**                      d. **from**
24. We should ..... our parents advice.  
 a. **spend**                      b. **argue**                      c. **follow**                      d. **leave**
25. You should walk carefully and follow the .....  
 a. **signs**                      b. **tools**                      c. **drums**                      d. **masks** ٢٠٢٢ بورسعيد
26. Egypt is full of wonderful ancient ..... which tourists like to visit.  
 a. **books**                      b. **experiments**                      c. **moments**                      d. **monuments** ٢٠٢٣ السادات
27. This waiter put a ..... of soup in front of me.  
 a. **pan**                      b. **bowl**                      c. **plate**                      d. **bottle** ٢٠٢٣ طلخا
28. We bought a house with a large .....  
 a. **ball**                      b. **castle**                      c. **entrance**                      d. **ruin** ٢٠٢٣ شرق المنصورة

## must/ mustn't

يجب / يجب ألا

Form	Subject (فاعل) + <b>must</b> + inf. مصدر الفعل	- I <b>must</b> do ... .
Negative	Subject (فاعل) + <b>mustn't</b> + مصدر الفعل	- I <b>mustn't</b> do ... .
interrogative	فعل + فاعل + <b>must</b> + أداة استفهام	- What <b>must</b> you ... ?
Yes/ No Question	<b>Must</b> + مصدر الفعل + فاعل + ... ?	- <b>Must</b> you ... ? Yes, I <b>must</b> ./ No, I <b>mustn't</b> .

must

يجب أن : تدل على وجوب فعل شئ في الوقت الحاضر - اجباري أو ضروري

قاعدة تتبع **must** = It's necessary ضروري / It's a rule to follow☞ You **must** look right and left before you cross the road.☞ You **must** arrive at school on time.

mustn't

لا يجب / يجب ألا : تدل على منع فعل شئ في الوقت الحاضر.

ممنوع **mustn't** = It's dangerous / It's not allowed غير مسموح / It's forbiddenYou **mustn't** talk in the library.You **mustn't** drink water from the river. It's not clean.

## The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

التكوين :-



- I / He / She / It + **was** → + v. + ing  
- You / We / They + **were** → + v. + ing

► Rania **was reading** a book at 3:00 yesterday.

◀ يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي .

► What **were** you **doing** yesterday evening?I **was playing** tennis.

◀ إذا كان هناك حدث مستمر في الماضي وقطعه حدث قصير آخر فإن الحدث المستمر يكون ماضي مستمر والحدث القصير يكون ماضي بسيط . و تستخدم مع كلمات مثل **when / while / As**



► While / As + ماضي مستمر + ماضي بسيط  
**Past continuous Past Simple**



- ▶ **While/ As** we **were walking** into the museum, we **saw** some huge statues.
- ▶ My mother **bought** me some juice **while** I **was reading** about the museum.

**لاحظ :** يمكن أن يأتي بعد **while** فعل مضاف له **ing** مباشرة بدون **was/were** لعدم وجود فاعل:

- ▶ **While walking** in the street, I saw my friend Ali.
- يمكن أن يأتي بعد **while** الجملتين ماضي مستمر ، اذا كان الحدثان يحدثان في نفس الوقت.
- ▶ **While** I **was doing** my homework, my sister **was watching** TV.



▶ **When** + ماضي مستمر + ماضي بسيط

- ▶ **When** my mother **bought** me some juice, I **was reading** about the museum.
- ▶ I **was playing** football **when** I **fell** on the ground.

## Exercises

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: *SB/WB Exercises*

- You ..... eat or drink in the library. You must be quiet.  
a. **must**                      b. **can**                      c. **mustn't**                      d. **should**
- At school, you ..... listen to your teacher.  
a. **can't**                      b. **must**                      c. **mustn't**                      d. **shouldn't**
- At the Pyramids, you ..... touch the stones.  
a. **must**                      b. **can**                      c. **should**                      d. **mustn't**
- You ..... put your rubbish in the bin.  
a. **can't**                      b. **must**                      c. **mustn't**                      d. **shouldn't**
- While we ..... to go into the museum, I saw my friend Adel.  
a. **wait**                      b. **were waiting**                      c. **waited**                      d. **waiting**
- While my parents were buying the tickets. I ..... what I wanted to see first.  
a. **decides**                      b. **decided**                      c. **decide**                      d. **are deciding**
- While I was looking around the museum, I ..... amazing tall doors.  
a. **find**                      b. **finds**                      c. **found**                      d. **were finding**
- I put my bag on the floor while I ..... a photo.  
a. **was taking**                      b. **took**                      c. **takes**                      d. **take**
- While ..... home, Adel phoned me.  
a. **travelled**                      b. **travelling**                      c. **were travelling**                      d. **travels**
- When we ..... down for a picnic, lots of runners were running through the park.  
a. **sit**                      b. **were sitting**                      c. **sat**                      d. **sits**
- As Karim was taking photos of the animals, he ..... his phone.  
a. **lost**                      b. **was losing**                      c. **lose**                      d. **losing**
- While ..... tennis, Mona hurt her arm.  
a. **played**                      b. **was playing**                      c. **plays**                      d. **playing**

13. We were travelling on the train for hours before it finally ... at the station.  
 a. **arrive**                      b. **was arriving**                      c. **arrives**                      d. **arrived**
14. I ..... my homework when my sister called me.  
 a. **did**                      b. **doing**                      c. **was doing**                      d. **done**
15. I was playing on the computer when I ..... my keys.  
 a. **lose**                      b. **losing**                      c. **lost**                      d. **was losing**
16. While Salma ..... a book, her friend phoned her.  
 a. **was reading**                      b. **reading**                      c. **reads**                      d. **read**
17. I was walking to school ..... it started to rain.  
 a. **while**                      b. **as**                      c. **when**                      d. **if**
18. As I was watching TV, I ..... my friend.  
 a. **see**                      b. **saw**                      c. **seeing**                      d. **was seeing**
19. You must ..... your ticket before you enter the castle.  
 a. **buys**                      b. **buying**                      c. **bought**                      d. **buy**
20. You ..... eat inside the castle. It isn't allowed.  
 a. **mustn't**                      b. **can**                      c. **must**                      d. **should**
21. You mustn't ..... large bags at the ticket office.  
 a. **leaving**                      b. **left**                      c. **leave**                      d. **leaves**
22. You must ..... your rubbish home.  
 a. **take**                      b. **takes**                      c. **took**                      d. **taking**
23. We..... the castle while we were travelling to Alexandria.  
 a. **see**                      b. **saw**                      c. **were seeing**                      d. **sees**
24. Lots of birds were flying in the sky as we ..... down on the beach.  
 a. **sat**                      b. **were sitting**                      c. **sits**                      d. **sit**

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. While I was reading my book, the light ..... **(go)** out.
2. As the teacher was talking, I was ..... **(listen)** to him.
3. While we were shopping in the market, I ..... **(see)** my friends.
4. As I ..... **(walk)** to school, I lost my phone.
5. Ahmed was doing his homework when he ..... **(drop)** his pencil.
6. While ..... **(visit)** the museum, I found out an interesting fact.
7. You ..... **(must)** climb on the walls: it's dangerous!
8. You must ..... **(walked)** carefully and follow the signs in the castle.
9. You ..... **(must)** drink water from the canal. It is not clean.
10. We saw the castle while we ..... **(visit)** Alex. (الهرم ٢٠٢٢)
11. My parents ..... **(watch)** the tennis match at 6:00 yesterday. (طوخ)
12. You ..... **(should)** eat too many sweets They are bad for you. (المنتزة)
13. Students and teachers must ..... **(are)** polite to each other. (أجا ٢٠٢٢)
14. You ..... **(must)** run in a museum. (حلوان ٢٠٢٢)



# Unit 3 in brief

# Great jobs

important vocabulary			
agree	يوافق	infection	عدوى
bones	عظام	junior	فريق الكبار
brain	المخ	lungs	الرئتين
burn	يحرق	manager	مدير
championship	بطولة	natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية
charity	مؤسسة خيرية	nuclear	نووي
coach	مدرب	nursing	التمريض
competition	مسابقة	patron	راعي / ممول
countryside	الريف	princess	أميرة
date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	proud	فخور
earthquake	زلازل	pump	يضخ
emergency	طوارئ	rubbish collectors	جامع القمامة
female	أنثى	scared	خائف
final	نهائي	scientist	عالم
great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر	senior	فريق الناشئين
handball	كرة اليد	street cleaners	عمال نظافة
heart	قلب	surgeon	جراح
hero	بطل	volunteer	متطوع
heroic	بطولي	win	يفوز

## Prepositions and expressions

Try to	يحاول أن	In Africa	في أفريقيا
Some of	بعض من	Learn more about...	يتعلم أكثر عن..
Win.....against	يفوز بـ...ضد..	The first to ...	الاول في
Lose against	يخسر ضد	Be first in	يكون الاول في
Win by + v.+ing	يفوز بواسطة	Under 19 world cup	كاس العالم تحت 19
Proud of	فخور بـ	Get a prize	يحصل علي جائزة
Famous for	مشهور بـ	Get married	يتزوج
Feel pleased	يشعر بالسعادة	In the final	في النهائي
Reason for	سبب لـ.....	Look through	ينظر خلال

## Language Notes

### win / gain / earn

- **Win** يفوز  
(a cup كأس / a medal ميدالية / a prize جائزة / a game مباراة / a race سباق / competition منافسة)
- **Gain** يكسب شيء معنوي  
information معلومات / experience خبرة / fame شهرة
- **Earn** يكسب مالا يعيش منه  
Money مال / نقود / his living قوت يومه

### Like - alike - As

- **Like** مثل للتشبيه
- **Alike** متشابه / متساوي
- **As** مثل (وظيفة)

### Too - either

- **Too** أيضا (تأتي آخر الجملة المثبتة)
- **Either** أيضا (تأتي آخر الجملة المنفية)

### There - Their

- **There** هناك ✗ here هنا
- **Their** ضمير ملكية (ملكهم)

## EXERCISES BASED ON VOCABULARY

### ➤ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Zamalek won the ..... against Al-Ahly.  
a finally      b finish      c final      d end
- I feel very ..... to meet you, Mr. Mohamed.  
a pleased      b pleasure      c please      d pleasing
- Ahmed was ..... a school project on his family.  
a Working      b playing      c doing      d making
- Roquia was a ..... for the Red Crescent.  
a voluntary      b volunteer      c tourist      d worker
- The Egyptian handball team won an important ..... last year.  
a competition      b completion      c information      d money



- 6- A ..... helps people who are poor, homeless or ill .  
 a school      b policeman      c hospitals      d charity
- 7- Omer is very ..... of his father.  
 a happy      b poor      c proud      d pride
- 8- For older people we use “ ..... ”  
 a senior      b junior      c doctor      d competitor
- 9- Mr. Mohamed works for no money to help people, he is a .....  
 a charity      b volunteer      c worker      d doctor
- 10- I prefer living in the ..... to enjoy fresh air.  
 a city      b natural disaster      c countryside      d town
- 11- A: What is your ..... of birth?      -B: I was born on October, 17th .  
 a place      b date      c nationality      d address
- 12- Egypt is famous ..... its nice weather.  
 a with      b to      c by      d for
- 13- Our national team deserves a respected foreign .....  
 a coach      b cushion      c player      d trainers
- 14- ..... is a sport with seven players in a team, they throw the ball into a goal to win.  
 a Football      b Volleyball      c Handball      d Tennis
- 15- A ..... is a terrible event such as an earthquake or floods.  
 a emergency      b natural disaster      c charity      d accident
- 16- A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.  
 a sports coach      b surgeon      c police officer      d hero
- 17- How many times our national football team won the African ..... of nations  
 a glass      b cup      c saucer      d medal
- 18- Our Handball national team is one of the biggest teams in the .....  
 a World      b Africa      c Asia      d Europe
- 19- I'd like to write about my ..... mother.  
 a hero      b heroic      c heroin      d heroine
- 20- My father is the ..... of a big company.  
 a manage      b managing      c managements      d manager
- 21- You can give money to a ..... to help poor people.  
 a charity      b charitable      c chair      d chart
- 22- Nour El Sherbini ..... the World Squash Championship in 2020.  
 a win      b gained      c won      d gain

## Final Revision

- 23- .....take air into the body.  
**a** Heart                      **b** Lungs                      **c** Kidney                      **d** Liver
- 24- He is a .....,he protects people's lives and money.  
**a** doctor                      **b** teacher                      **c** police officer                      **d** farmer
- 25- I don't think I .....the answer to this question.  
**a** no                      **b** new                      **c** known                      **d** know
- 26- Dirty water from a river can .....you if you drink it.  
**a** infect                      **b** enjoy                      **c** clean                      **d** mend
- 27- I went to my uncle's house yesterday, but nobody was.....  
**a** their                      **b** there                      **c** theirs                      **d** here
- 28- Zeina is good at English and she is good at maths.....  
**a** neither                      **b** so                      **c** too                      **d** either
- 29- Street.....help to keep our cities clean.  
**a** builders                      **b** makers                      **c** walkers                      **d** cleaners
- 30- I think rubbish .....can be heroes.  
**a** reviewers                      **b** managers                      **c** collectors                      **d** bakers
- 31- This nurse won a prize for her .....work.  
**a** silly                      **b** useless                      **c** heroic                      **d** ugly
- 32- The little girl is always .....of dogs. She doesn't like them.  
**a** scary                      **b** proud                      **c** scared                      **d** fond
- 33- I asked Ali about the .....for his happiness.  
**a** reason                      **b** season                      **c** cause                      **d** because
- 34- Good people work .....to achieve their goals.  
**a** hardly                      **b** difficult                      **c** easily                      **d** hard
- 35- Children in Egypt .....school at the age of four.  
**a** start                      **b** walk                      **c** finish                      **d** play
- 36- Mr. Mohamed studied English at Cairo.....  
**a** hospital                      **b** factory                      **c** University                      **d** museum
- 37- Mrs. Karima used to work as a .....in a big hospital.  
**a** nurse                      **b** teacher                      **c** patient                      **d** professor
- 38- The heart .....blood around the body.  
**a** pours                      **b** spills                      **c** bumps                      **d** pumps
- 39- Ancient Egyptian doctors wrote down their ideas .....of years ago.  
**a** thousand                      **b** thousands                      **c** hundred                      **d** tens



## Grammar in brief

## Used to

المصدر + **used to** + فاعل

- ودي بنستخدمها لما نحب نتكلم عن عادة أو حدث كان موجوداً في الماضي وانتهى , زي مثلاً أقول :  
( هو كان متعود يدخن ) دي معناها انه خلاص بطل تدخين الحمد لله ..

EX He used to smoke. [ **he doesn't smoke now** ]EX We used to live in a small flat. [ **now we live in a big flat** ]

• ودي ببسلاويها ف المعني

s + فعل ) ⇒ لم يعد ( مبقتش ) **no longer** ⇒ فاعل مفردالمصدر ⇒ **no longer** + ⇒ I \ فاعل جمع

EX She used to sleep early.

-She no longer sleeps early.

مصدر + **habit to** ( s اسم المالك ) **It was my**

EX It was her habit to sleep early.

النفى

المصدر. **didn't + use to + inf.**

EX I didn't use to sleep late.

• ودي لو حبيت تعمل عليها سؤال بـ ( هل ... ) هتبقى بالشكل ده

هل كنت متعود علي ... ؟ ؟ مصدر **Did + use to + inf.** + فاعل• يبقى خلي بالك كده اننا في حالة السؤال والنفى بنرجع ( **used to** ) لأصلها ( **use** )

EX Did you use to sleep early?

-Yes, I did.

السؤال بأداة استفهام

مصدر ؟ **inf. + use to + فاعل + did + أداة استفهام**

EX How did you use to come to school when you were young?

ملحوظة مهمة

لما بيجيبلي جملة فيها عادة كانت في الماضي ( **used to** ) ويجي بعد كده يجبلي ( **but now** ) ف الجملة اللي بعدها بتكون مضارع بسيط ( مثبت أو منفي ) عكس الجملة الأولى ( وممكن نستخدم في اخر الجملة المنفية **any longer** )

( **doesn't \ don't** ) + فاعل + **but now** , المصدر + **used to** + فاعلEX She used to watch TV , but now she doesn't watch TV **any longer**.( مصدر \ s + فعل ) + فاعل + **but now** , المصدر + **didn't use to** + فاعلEX She **didn't use to** sleep late , but now she **sleeps** late.

مكنتش متعوده تنام متأخر , بس دلوت بتنام متأخر .

## EXERCISES BASED ON GRAMMAR

➤ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I didn't ..... her yesterday.

- a** see                      **b** saw                      **c** seeing                      **d** seen

2. How did you ..... to the park?

- a** gone                      **b** go                      **c** went                      **d** going

3. They didn't ..... their friends last month.

- a** met                      **b** meeting                      **c** meet                      **d** meets

4. Yara went ..... last week.

- a** shop                      **b** shops                      **c** shopping                      **d** shopper

5. It used to be ..... to send letters by pigeons .

- a** pop                      **b** not good                      **c** not nice                      **d** popular

6. My friend ..... to swim fast.

- a** used                      **b** used to                      **c** didn't use to                      **d** use

7. I used to ..... football when I was younger.

- a** playing                      **b** played                      **c** play                      **d** plays

8. He didn't ..... smoke. Now , he does.

- a** used to                      **b** uses to                      **c** using                      **d** use to

9. Did you ..... to annoy your friends at school?

- a** use                      **b** use to                      **c** using                      **d** used to

10. She used to ..... long hair.

- a** have                      **b** having                      **c** has                      **d** had

11. He didn't ..... to arrive late.

- a** used                      **b** use                      **c** uses                      **d** using

12. She is used to ..... the poor.

- a** help                      **b** helps                      **c** helped                      **d** helping

13. What did he use to ..... ?

- a** did                      **b** does                      **c** doing                      **d** do

14. A knife is used ..... cutting meat.

- a** to                      **b** for                      **c** by                      **d** off

15. .... he use to watch TV?                      - Yes, he did.

- a** Was                      **b** Is                      **c** Does                      **d** Did

16. Ali used to ..... clever when he was young.

- a** be                      **b** being                      **c** do                      **d** doing



17. He used to.....useful things when he was young.

- a** be                      **b** being                      **c** do                      **d** doing

18. I didn't .....to live in such a big house.

- a** used                      **b** uses                      **c** using                      **d** use

19. Did he use to .....English?

- a** study                      **b** studied                      **c** studying                      **d** studies

20. He used to smoke ,but now he .....smoke.

- a** doesn't                      **b** don't                      **c** isn't                      **d** didn't

21. He used to be lazy , but now he.....

- a** is                      **b** isn't                      **c** don't                      **d** doesn't

22. Are your children used to .....a lot?

- a** walk                      **b** walks                      **c** walked                      **d** walking

23. She used to.....mistakes.

- a** make                      **b** makes                      **c** made                      **d** making

24. The camera .....to take photographs.

- a** is using                      **b** is used                      **c** uses                      **d** used

25. When .....you go to bed last night?

- a** did                      **b** will                      **c** do                      **d** was

26. The secretary .....stay up late to finish her work .

- a** uses to                      **b** used to                      **c** is used to                      **d** is using to

27. I used to smoke but now I don't smoke any .....

- a** longer                      **b** most                      **c** long                      **d** longest

28. Radwa used to live in Cairo but she .....lives there.

- a** doesn't                      **b** no longer                      **c** any more                      **d** as long as

29. My friend .....to swim fast.

- a** used                      **b** used to                      **c** didn't use to                      **d** use

30. He didn't.....score goals. Now , he does.

- a** used to                      **b** uses to                      **c** using                      **d** use to

31. Did you .....to annoy your friends at school?

- a** use                      **b** use to                      **c** using                      **d** used to

32. We used to.....pigeons to send our letters.

- a** use                      **b** using                      **c** to use                      **d** not to use

➤ **Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:**

1. What .....(does) he use to eat?
2. She.....( uses) to cook well.
3. He used to be lazy, but now he.....( wasn't.)
4. The book is used.....( to) reading.
5. I used to..... (do) lazy.
6. He .....(use) to smoke badly.
7. They used to .....(playing) football.
8. He used to have long hair, but now he..... isn't.
9. She is used to.....( get )up early.
10. Did he.....( used) to study hard?

➤ **Complete the dialogue:**

**A reporter makes a report about footballers.**

**Reporter** : Hello (1)..... Is your name?

**Footballer** : Hamada shanah

**Reporter** : What did you (2) .....to do 20 years ago?

**Footballer** : I used to (3).....football .

**Reporter** :(4).....you earn much money from it?

**Footballer** : No, I didn't. we played because we loved playing for our country.

**Reporter** : I wish you more success.

**footballer** : (5).....

➤ **Complete the dialogue:**

**Mazin** : Hello, Hany.

**Hany** : Hello, Mazin.

**Mazin** : Did you (1).....to live in Cairo when you were young?

**Hany** : (2).....I used to live in Giza.

**Mazin** : Did you use to (3).....to school?

**Hany** : Yes. I used to go to school on foot.

**Mazin** : What hobby (4).....you use to do?

**Hany** : I used to read stories. What about you?

**Mazin** : I used to (5).....

**Hany** : Great



## Test based on unit 3

### Listening

➤ 1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1) We are proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub because he is .....  
 a great                      b lazy                      c funny                      d old
- 2) He helps people by giving them new .....  
 a books                      b hearts                      c juice                      d legs
- 3) In 2001, Dr Magdy .....  
 a died                      b killed                      c stopped working                      d married
- 4) Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in .....  
 a Cairo                      b Aswan                      c Giza                      d Alex.

### Language Functions

➤ 2- Complete the following dialogue :

- Ahmed : Where do you (1) ..... ?  
 Arwa : I live (2) ..... Giza  
 Ahmed : (3) ..... do you come to school?  
 Arwa : I come by bus.  
 Ahmed : So, what do you (4) ..... of your new school?  
 Arwa : I think it's a good school.  
 Ahmed : (5) ..... you like your teachers there?  
 Arwa : Yes, I like them very much

➤ -Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues

- 1) Magda : Didn't you use to use the computer?  
 Mum : No , .....
- 2) A new student : ..... ?  
 A teacher : It is on the first floor  
 A new student : Thank you for helping.

### Reading Comprehension

➤ 3- Read the following , then answer the questions :

People used pigeons to communicate hundreds of years ago. However , tour guides in Colorado , USA, are using pigeons today ! The guides take photographs of the tourists who have travelled down an exciting river. They then use the pigeons to carry the cards from the camera 30 kilometers down the river to their office where they can print the photos. They used to take the cards from the camera by car, but this took a long time. The pigeons take just 20 minutes .After the tourists have travelled to the office , the photos are ready to see .

□ A- Answer the following question:

- 1) What do the pigeons carry ?  
 .....
- 2) Why has this helped the tourists in Colorado?  
 .....
- 3) Where is the office?  
 .....



# Final Revision

## ❑ B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4) In the past , they used to ..... the cards back to the office.  
 a drive                      b walk                      c ask the tourists to carry                      d not take
- 5) They print the photos in the.....  
 a offices                      b shops                      c markets                      d clubs
- 6) The pigeons are ..... than the cars  
 a slow                      b slower                      c fast                      d faster

## Vocabulary and Structure

### >4- choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

- 1- He used to ..... up early, when he was young.  
 a get                      b getting                      c gets                      d got
- 2- He is used to ..... clever things.  
 a be                      b being                      c do                      d doing
- 3- Mrs. Zeina used to work as a ..... in an international school.  
 a nurse                      b teacher                      c patient                      d professor
- 4- The heart ..... blood around the body.  
 a pours                      b spills                      c bumps                      d pumps
- 5- Ancient Egyptian doctors wrote down their ..... thousands of years ago.  
 a ideas                      b stories                      c patients                      d illness
- 6- I didn't ..... to live in such a big house.  
 a used                      b uses                      c using                      d use
- 7- Roquia was a ..... for the Red Crescent.  
 a voluntary                      b volunteer                      c tourist                      d worker
- 8- A ..... always helps people when there is a disaster.  
 a engineer                      b teacher                      c charity worker                      d actor
- 9- I used to smoke but now I don't smoke any .....  
 a longer                      b most                      c long                      d longest
- 10- A/An ..... does a job without being paid.  
 a patient                      b engineer                      c volunteer                      d adult

### >5-Complete the sentences with the correct form of the underlined word(s):

- 1) I'm very proud to my father. ( ..... )
- 2) Did he used to study hard? ( ..... )
- 3) Aya won a price for her school project. ( ..... )
- 4) He didn't used to come late ( ..... )
- 5) She is used to cook our lunch ( ..... )

## Writing

### >6- Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

## ( Rubbish collectors )

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Unit 4 in brief

# Into the past

## Important vocabulary

ancient	قديم	necklace	قلادة / عقد
arch	قنطرة	needle	مسلة
awesome	رائع	papyrus	ورق البردي
bowl	سلطانية	pharaoh	فرعون
castle	قلعة	pollution	تلوث
clay	صلصال	pot	أناء
coin	عملة معدنية	pyramid	هرم
damage	يُدمر	ring	خاتم
debate	جدال / مناقشة	ruins	بقايا
entrance	مدخل	stadium	ستاد
environment	البيئة	statue	تمثال
facts	حقائق	subheading	عنوان فرعي
figure	تمثال	temple	معبد
heading	عنوان رئيسي	theatre	مسرح
historic	تاريخي	tools	أدوات
local	محلي	tourists	السياح
mask	قناع	vase	فازة
mosque	مسجد	view	منظر طبيعي
museum	متحف	wood	خشب

## Prepositions and expressions

necessary to.....	من الضروري ان	tell about	يتكلم عن
put ... in	يضع في / بداخل	protect from	يحمي من
interested in	مهتم ب....	get a guide	يتجول برفقة مرشد
Sitting on	يجلس على	Follow ... across	يتتبعه ... عبر
Behave well	يتصرف جيدا	Made of	مصنوع من ( لم يتغير شكل المادة )
Pay for	يدفع ل...	Made from	مصنوع من ( تغير شكل المادة )

## Language Notes

### Enjoy- Like -Love

➤ **enjoy – like – love + v.ing**

يحب ( يحب فعل شئ عموما ك عادة )

➤ **enjoy – like – love + to+ مصدر**

يحب ( يحب فعل شئ علي وجه الخصوص وليس دائما )

### Too -Very

➤ **Too**

جدا ( تفيد النفي وصعوبة اتمام الحدث )

➤ **Very**

جدا ( تفيد صعوبة ولكن يمكن اتمام الحدث )

## EXERCISES BASED ON VOCABULARY

**Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- You must have a ..... to get to enter the cinema.  
 a book                      b booklet                      c ticket                      d note
- A ..... is a structure with a curved top and straight sides  
 a gun                      b arch                      c sword                      d knife
- It's ..... to have a goal in your life.  
 a necessary                      b unnecessary                      c hard                      d difficult
- This text is ..... the Great Pyramid.  
 a about                      b for                      c at                      d by
- A ..... is A building in which Muslim worship.  
 a Mosque                      b castle                      c museum                      d church
- I'm Interested ..... reading novels.  
 a in                      b for                      c at                      d by
- The teacher asked us to write a ..... of our daily routine.  
 a describe                      b inspire                      c description                      d prescribe
- We went on a school ..... last Friday.  
 a day                      b week                      c flight                      d trip
- A ..... is a very large stone building built in the past , that was easily to defend against attack.  
 a Mosque                      b castle                      c museum                      d hotel
- Zeina arrived ..... school late.  
 a in                      b for                      c at                      d by
- I think it isn't ..... to lift this box. It's too heavy.  
 a lazy                      b easy                      c hard                      d difficult
- A ..... is building where important cultural historical objects are kept and shown  
 a Mosque                      b castle                      c museum                      d hotel
- My sister likes visiting ..... places.  
 a historical                      b history                      c historian                      d historic
- I will ask the architect to design a nice ..... in the entrance of my garden .  
 a arch                      b archer                      c archaeology                      d art
- When I go to Cairo , I always admire visiting Salah al-Din 's ..... and its towers .  
 a temple                      b museum                      c castle                      d statue
- The grand Egyptian ..... will attract a lot of tourists from all over the world  
 a temple                      b museum                      c castle                      d statue



17. When I look out of my bedroom window, I have a beautiful.....  
**a** allocation      **b** sight      **c** view      **d** review
18. They didn't complete this building at all. These..... are thousands of years old.  
**a** ruins      **b** arches      **c** entrances      **d** castles
19. This old castle..... to the Romans times.  
**a** gets      **b** dates      **c** goes      **d** jumps
20. Many people used..... to help them paint around their eyes.  
**a** cupboards      **b** beds      **c** TVs      **d** mirrors
21. The paint helped to protect their eyes..... the sun and kept away insects.  
**a** for      **b** from      **c** in      **d** at
22. Money from tourism helps to pay..... local people to look after the stones.  
**a** for      **b** from      **c** in      **d** at
23. Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like.....  
**a** sunset      **b** sunrise      **c** senet      **d** senate
24. Tourists can visit stones, but they must not..... them.  
**a** damage      **b** imagine      **c** protect      **d** help
25. They tell us..... the people who made them and how they lived.  
**a** for      **b** from      **c** about      **d** at
26. people got into the bowl and used their..... to mix the ingredients.  
**a** foot      **b** feet      **c** hands      **d** legs
27. The Ancient Egyptians used..... and bowls for making food.  
**a** pots      **b** plates      **c** dishes      **d** cups
28. You..... look right and left before you cross the road.  
**a** must      **b** mustn't      **c** don't have to      **d** shouldn't
- 29..... from the past can help us to understand What life was like many years ago .  
**a** Objects      **b** Stones      **c** Cups      **d** Squares
30. Our national..... team achieved good results in the world cup .  
**a** football      **b** handball      **c** volleyball      **d** basketball
31. I am proud..... my father .He is my hero  
**a** in      **b** off      **c** of      **d** at
32. You should..... politely with your friends and with strangers.  
**a** behave      **b** behalf      **c** behaviour      **d** see
33. There are two-lion statue at the..... of Kasr Elnil bridge .  
**a** enter      **b** entering      **c** entrance      **d** enters
34. The police are working hard to remove the..... of the earthquake .  
**a** ruins      **b** rocks      **c** rivers      **d** stones

35. Tourists need a ..... to give them information about the sites  
 a teacher      b doctor      c guide      d nurse
36. The carpenter used many ..... to repair the broken furniture .  
 a tools      b towels      c tart      d fuel
37. There was a ..... on TV about helping the environment.  
 a debate      b date      c carpet      d lamp
38. .... is important for Egypt because it brings a lot of money and jobs.  
 a Infection      b illness      c Pollution      d Tourism
39. Some people are careless as they ..... rubbish in historic places.  
 a drop      b make      c lend      d mix
40. Some people think that tourists can ..... important places.  
 a attack      b attract      c damage      d debate
41. A century is a period of ..... years.  
 a 10      b 20      c 100      d 1000
42. My sister works in a big ..... that organises holidays.  
 a fort      b castle      c palace      d company
43. Muhammad Ali was the ..... of Egypt in the past. He was the most important person.  
 a ruler      b roller      c baker      d waiter
44. You ..... forget to do your homework regularly.  
 a must to      b must      c mustn't to      d mustn't
45. Muslims go to ..... every day to pray .  
 a mosque      b museum      c castle      d statue
46. Last winter we went to Luxor and visited its beautiful .....  
 a temples      b houses      c seas      d roads
47. The trip was ..... It was amazing.  
 a scary      b pleased      c awesome      d boring
48. We call something is ..... when it is very old.  
 a new      b modern      c patient      d ancient
49. In the past, people built ..... to watch their favourite sports.  
 a museums      b mosques      c stadiums      d theatres
50. We bought a new house with a large .....  
 a entrance      b wall      c ruin      d castle



## Grammar in brief

### The past simple الماضي البسيط

التكوين

فاعل + فعل + **d / ed / ied**

EX Ali played football.

علي لعب الكرة

ملاحظات

- جميع الافعال يضاف إليها (ed) ما عدا

1- الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (e) يضاف إليه (d)

2- الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (Y) قبلها حرف ساكن تقلب إلى (ied)

النفي

المصدر + **didn't** + الفاعل

EX Ali didn't play football.

(خلي بالك اننا حذفنا ed يعني الفعل بيرجع لأصله ف النفي)

السؤال

1- السؤال بـ (هل ... ؟)

? مصدر + الفاعل + **Did**

EX Did you watch the match?

هل شاهدت المباراة؟

-Yes, I did.

- No, I didn't.

2- السؤال بـ (أداة استفهام ... ؟)

? مصدر + مفرد + **did** + أداة استفهام

EX When did you visit The Tower?

متي زرت البرج؟

الكلمات الدالة

أي تاريخ قديم \ ف الماضي **in the past** / ذات مرة **once** / الماضي **last** / أمس **Yesterday**

خلي بالك

- الفعل ( **were / was** ) فعل ماضي بسيط من الأفعال الشاذة ◀ ◀

EX I **was** at the zoo yesterday.

- النفي بتاعه بيكون ( **wasn't / weren't** )

EX I **wasn't** at the zoo yesterday.

- السؤال بنعكس وخلي بالك ان ( **I was** ) بتتحول في السؤال لـ ( **Were you** ) بمعنى ( هل كنت..؟ )

EX **Were you** at the zoo yesterday?

-Yes, I was.

- No, I wasn't.

## Past continuous الماضي المستمر

• نيجي بقي للماضي المستمر ... يعني ايه ماضي مستمر ؟؟؟

• شوف الفرق بين الجملتين دول  
1- انا لعبت امبارح .  
2- انا كنت بلعب امبارح .

• ايه الفرق بين الجملتين ؟ ... بص ياسيدي وياستي بردوا ...

• الجملة الأولى بتقولك الحدث بصورة مباشرة , وده اللي هو الماضي البسيط ... زي ما تقول ( انا أكلت - شربت - نمت .. )

• اما الجملة الثانية بتوصفك الحدث اللي كنت بتعمله وده بنسميه الماضي المستمر ...

(كنت باكل / كنت بشرب / كنت نايم ..)

• خلي بالك ان: الماضي المستمر ده مش بينفع مع كل الافعال , يعني فيه افعال لازم تيجي ماضي بسيط متنفّش تبقي مستمر لأنها بتتم علي مرة واحده , زي مثلا ( يسجل هدف - يقع - يتعطل ..... )

يعني مثلا مينفعش نقول ( انا كنت بقع ) انما نقول ( انا وقعت )

حاجه كمان ان الماضي المستمر بنستخدمه لما نحدد الوقت بالظبط امتي يعني اقول ( امبارح الساعة 7 كنت نايم ) يعني هو تعريفه انه ( حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين من الماضي وانتهى ) تعالى نشوف بيتعمل ازاى

I / He / She / It	المفرد	→	was	} + v.ing
We / You / They	الجمع	→	were	

EX I was playing at 7 p.m. yesterday

طيب لو عايزين ننفيه بنستخدم ( not ) بعد ( was / were )

1- لو جاء الماضي المستمر مع الماضي البسيط ف كده بنتكلم علي حدث كان مستمرا ( مستمر )

وحدث فعل آخر (بسيط) يعني حدث هذا الفعل اثناء حدوث الفعل المستمر , وقد يقطعه أو لا يقطعه

يعني مثلا (أثناء ما كنت بتفرج ع الفيلم , النور قطع) هنا فيه تعطيل , أو (أثناء ما كنت بتفرج علي الماتش , بابا وصل )

هنا مفيش تعطيل ولا حاجه ,, المهم لما حدث يحصل ويتم اثناء حدوث فعل آخر يبقي اللي كان شغال ده هيبقي ( المستمر ) واللي حصل اثناءه ده ( البسيط ) وهيجوا بالشكل ده .

ماضي بسيط + ماضي مستمر → أثناء While / As / Just as

EX While I was watching the film, the light went out.

طيب لو حبيننا نخلي الرابط في نص الجملتين , ف الجملة اللي بعد الرابط بتفضل بعده مباشرة و الثانية بتيجي قبله

ماضي مستمر ← while / as / just as → ماضي بسيط

EX The light went out while I was watching the film.

ماضي مستمر → لأن because ← ماضي بسيط

EX I didn't answer you because I was sleeping.



**When** عندما ماضي مستمر + ماضي بسيط

**EX** When the bell rang, I was sleeping.

ماضي بسيط ← **when** ← ماضي مستمر

**EX** I was sleeping **when** the bell rang.

2- في حالة حدثين كانا يحدثان في وقت واحد ( لا يوجد اي تعطيل ) يعني مثلا  
( أثناء ما كنت بتفرج ع الفيلم, أختي كانت بتطبخ ) هنا الاثنين شغالين ف وقت واحد

**While / As / Just as** أثناء ماضي مستمر + ماضي مستمر

**EX** While I was watching the film, she was cooking.

3- في حالة بقي حدثين حدثوا ورا بعض ع طول ( يعني اقول لما الاستاذ دخل الفصل الطلبة وقفت )

ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط **When** عندما

**EX** When the teacher entered the class, the student stood up.

يبقي قبل ماتختار لازم تشوف الاحداث بتقطع بعضها ولا كانت ف وقت واحد ولا ورا بعض

ماضي بسيط + اسم ----- أثناء / خلال **During**

**EX** During the party, I met my friend Manal

## EXERCISES BASED ON GRAMMAR

➤ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Khaled ..... to the museum last month.  
a go                      b will go                      c goes                      d went
- When ..... Omer's birthday?  
a do                      b did                      c was                      d does
- Zeina ..... TV an hour ago.  
a watched                      b watch                      c are watching                      d will watch
- My friend Ali went ..... yesterday.  
a swim                      b swam                      c swims                      d swimming
- What did Omer ..... when he arrived?  
a did                      b doing                      c does                      d do
- How did Salwa ..... when she saw the lion yesterday?  
a feel                      b felt                      c feels                      d feeling
- Radwa wrote the e-mail .....  
a now                      b last week                      c tomorrow                      d next

# Final Revision

8. Roquia ..... born in 2017.  
 a was                      b are                      c did                      d do
9. When Ahmed was young, He always ..... football.  
 a play                      b plays                      c playing                      d played
10. .... you ready for the exam last week?  
 a Did                      b Were                      c Do                      d Are
11. How did you go to school? - I ..... by car.  
 a go                      b going                      c will go                      d went
12. No, Abeer didn't ..... Aswan last year.  
 a visit                      b visited                      c go                      d went
13. When did you have your last math lesson? - We ..... it at 2 o'clock.  
 a had                      b have                      c will have                      d has
14. The ship sank because there ..... a terrible storm.  
 a are                      b is                      c was                      d were
15. How ..... your weekend?  
 a did                      b does                      c was                      d do
16. Salah El- Din Al- Ayouby ..... the citadel to protect Cairo.  
 a build                      b is building                      c built                      d has built
17. Yesterday, I ..... my homework with my sister.  
 a did                      b do                      c done                      d doing
18. When did you ..... your friends ?  
 a see                      b saw                      c seeing                      d seen
19. Did you watch the film last night ? No , I .....  
 a don't                      b did                      c didn't                      d watch
20. What time ..... you play computer games last night ?  
 a did                      b was                      c does                      d do
21. When I was younger, I ..... to live with my grandma.  
 a going                      b go                      c gone                      d went
22. They ..... attend the conference last month.  
 a won't                      b didn't                      c wasn't                      d don't
23. Once , there ..... a bridge here , Gezira Bridge.  
 a was                      b is                      c were                      d are
24. Building the citadel began in 1176 and ..... in 1184.  
 a finish                      b finished                      c finishing                      d finishes



25. We had lunch at the restaurant and the food ..... delicious.  
 a is                      b are                      c were                      d was
26. Omar was playing basketball when he ..... his knee.  
 a hurting                      b hurt                      c was hurting                      d is hurting
27. My mobile rang while I ..... my homework.  
 a do                      b does                      c did                      d was doing
28. He was driving to work when the accident.....  
 a will happen                      b happened                      c happens                      d happen
29. While ..... my homework, I slept.  
 a was doing                      b were doing                      c did                      d doing
30. What were you ..... yesterday morning?  
 a do                      b did                      c doing                      d was doing
31. Were you sleeping when the clock ..... off?  
 a go                      b goes                      c going                      d went
32. Was it ..... when you left school?  
 a rain                      b rains                      c rained                      d raining
33. My friends ..... to cinema last Sunday to watch a nice movie.  
 a go                      b went                      c going                      d was go
34. Last night, I ..... in my room when my mother opened the door.  
 a sleep                      b sleeping                      c was sleeping                      d slept
35. What ..... when the accident happened?  
 a were you doing                      b you were doing                      c did you doing                      d you did doing
36. I ..... down the street when the car suddenly crashed against the tree.  
 a walked                      b was walking                      c walking                      d walk
37. I ..... my lunch when the phone rang.  
 a have eaten                      b was eating                      c has eaten                      d ate
38. What ..... when you heard the explosion ?  
 a were they doing                      b are they doing                      c did they use to do                      d did they do
39. As I ..... for tomorrow's trip, I fell down and hurt my leg.  
 a prepare                      b prepared                      c was preparing                      d preparing
40. I and my friends didn't play because it.....  
 a rained                      b was raining                      c rains                      d raining
41. While she was studying, her brother ..... TV.  
 a watched                      b was watching                      c watch                      d watches

# Final Revision

42. Yara wasn't eating when her father .....

- a** call                      **b** calls                      **c** calling                      **d** called

43. .... he arrived, they were having lunch.

- a** While                      **b** When                      **c** During                      **d** On

44. When she visited her uncle, he was .....

- a** swim                      **b** swam                      **c** swims                      **d** swimming

45. As he was carrying the vase, he ..... it on the floor.

- a** drops                      **b** was dropping                      **c** had dropped                      **d** dropped

46. My sister ..... the room while I was making tea.

- a** cleaned                      **b** was cleaning                      **c** is cleaning                      **d** cleans

47. .... my holiday, I visited many places .

- a** When                      **b** While                      **c** During                      **d** Where

48. Last summer holiday, my friends and I ..... many Moroccan cities.

- a** visit                      **b** visiting                      **c** was visited                      **d** visited

49. Yesterday, I ..... television while my father was reading a book.

- a** was watching                      **b** watched                      **c** watch                      **d** watches

➤ **Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:**

1. While he (took) a bath, his friend arrived. ( ..... )
2. While he was sleeping, his sister (watch) TV. ( ..... )
3. My mobile (ring) while I was doing my homework. ( ..... )
4. He was walking when he (see) the accident. ( ..... )
5. While was sleeping, I had a bad dream. ( ..... )
6. Where were you (have) lunch? ( ..... )
7. (While) the match, Ronaldo scored a goal. ( ..... )
8. When he was young, he sometimes (watches) TV. ( ..... )
9. Where did they (lived)? ( ..... )
10. He didn't (helped) me with my homework. ( ..... )
11. He (born) in 2010. Now he is ten years old. ( ..... )
12. We (visit) the museum 4 weeks ago. ( ..... )
13. I (have) breakfast with them 15 minutes ago. ( ..... )



## ➤ Complete the dialogue:

### **Sarah is asking Roquia about the time she is going shopping.**

**Sarah :** When are you going shopping, Roquia ?

**Roquia :** I am (1) ..... shopping next Sunday.

**Sarah :** (2) ..... will you go with?

**Roquia :** My mum, Mona.

**Sarah :** (3) ..... do you usually go shopping ?

**Roquia :** (4) ..... taxi.

### **Salma meets Amal, a new girl in the class.**

**Salma :** Hello, Amal! How can I (1) ..... you ?

**Amal :** May you give me a (2) ..... of our school ?

**Salma :** With pleasure.

**Amal :** How (3) ..... will it take to know our class?

**Salma :** Only five minutes. It is at the (4) ..... of the first floor.

**Amal :** Thanks.

### **Ahmed and Ola are talking about exams.**

**Ahmed :** Are you (1) ..... for today's exams?

**Ola :** Yes, I am (2) ..... about you ?

**Ahmed :** Of course I revised all the units.

**Ola :** Really! What about the (3) ..... ?

**Ahmed :** The Reader ? I did, too. It's a very interesting story.

**Ola :** I hope we will (4) ..... in the English exam.

## Test based on unit 4

### Listening

>1-Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1) How was Ali's holiday?

a bad

b sad

c great

d boring

2) Where did Ali go on holiday?

a Italy

b France

c Iraq

d Jordan

3) How did he travel?

a on a snowmobile

b by plane

c by ship

d on foot

4) Where did he stay?

a in a flat

b in an attic

c in a house

d on a ship

### Language Functions

>2- Complete the following dialogue :

**Ali meets a tourist and asks him some questions.**

Ali : Hello, I'm pleased to meet you.

Tourist : I'm pleased to meet you, too.

Ali : Where do you (1) ..... from ?

Tourist : I come from England.

Ali : It is your first visit to Egypt.

Tourist : (2) ..... I visited Egypt two years ago.

Ali : (3) ..... are you going to stay here ?

Tourist : Two weeks.

Ali : Which places are you going to visit ?

Tourist : (4) ..... at Giza and the Valley of the Kings in Luxor.

>Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues

A. Teacher : Who built the Citadel in Cairo ?

Mona : .....

Teacher : He is a great leader.

B. Esraa : ..... ?

Nora: King Ptolemy built it in about 283 BCE.

Esraa: I hope I will visit it soon .

### Reading Comprehension

>3- Read the following , then answer the questions :

At school we learn many subject . My favourite school subject is English . We learn it to be able to speak to tourists who come to Egypt . We also learn it to read English books and magazines . Most names of machines and medicines are written in English We also learn history and geography to know something about the world around us we learn Arabic to know our language very well .

□ **A- Answer the following question.**

1) Can you read names of medicines ? why ?

2) What's your favourite subject ?



3) Is learning English able us to speak to tourists ?

□ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 4) We learn ..... because it's our first language .  
 a English                      b geography                      c Arabic                      d history
- 5) At school we learn many ..... subjects .  
 a bad                      b useful                      c horrible                      d short
- 6) Most names of machines and medicines are written in .....  
 a English                      b Arabic                      c French                      d Spanish

## Vocabulary and Structure

➤ **4- choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

- 1) If you ..... a building, you go into it.  
 a damage                      b enter                      c leave                      d walk
- 2) People usually build ..... around gardens or between the rooms of a building.  
 a statues                      b stairs                      c walls                      d corridors
- 3) A ..... is a person who goes to many places.  
 a tablet                      b truck                      c tower                      d traveller
- 4) There's a beautiful ..... from the top of the mountain.  
 a review                      b view                      c preview                      d interview
- 5) I didn't ..... to the museum last week .  
 a go                      b went                      c gone                      d going
- 6) My sister ..... me a nice jacket yesterday .  
 a buys                      b bought                      c buy                      d buying
- 7) King Fuad built Muntazah .....  
 a please                      b Place                      c plus                      d Palace
- 8) I'm so sorry to ..... you, but did King Abbas build it ?  
 a inter                      b interrupt                      c entertainment                      d internet
- 9) Building the citadel began in 1176 and ..... in 1184.  
 a finish                      b finished                      c finishing                      d finishes
- 10) We had lunch at the restaurant and the food ..... delicious.  
 a is                      b are                      c were                      d was

➤ **5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the underlined word(s):**

- 1) Last night , I have a very good night's sleep. ( ..... )
- 2) When you coming I was having a shower. ( ..... )
- 3) In the evenings, I like to go out and walk on the platform. ( ..... )
- 4) Thousand of towers comes to Egypt every year. ( ..... )

## Writing

➤ **6- Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :**

**( What you must and mustn't do )**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### Unit (3)

date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	princess	أميرة
hero	بطل	charity	مؤسسة خيرية
junior	فريق الكبار	countryside	الريف
senior	فريق الناشئين	emergency	طوارئ
competition	مسابقة	natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية
handball	كرة اليد	proud	فخور
final	نهائي	volunteer	متطوع
surgeon	جراح	great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر
patron	راعي / ممول	brain	المخ
coach	مدرب	lungs	الرئتين
nuclear	نووي	heart	قلب
scientist	عالم	pump	يضخ
female	أنثى	burn	يحرق
scared	خائف	bones	عظام
infection	عدوى	earthquake	زلازل
agree	يوافق	nursing	التمريض
rubbish collectors	جامعي القمامة	championship	بطولته
heroic	بطولي	street cleaners	عمال نظافة
manager	مدير	win	يفوز

### Exercises

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from

1. What is your mother's job?

a. nurse                      b. doctor

c. pilot

d. teacher

2. Where does she work?

a. school                      b. airport

c. hospital

d. cinema

3. Where did she study?

a. Faculty of Medicine

b. Faculty of Nursing

c. Faculty of Arts

d. Faculty of Engineering

4. Does she sometimes work at night?

a. No, she isn't

b. No, she doesn't

c. Yes, she does

d. I don't know



## 2. Complete the following dialogue:

- Karim Can I ask you some questions for my quiz?  
 Tarek (1).....  
 Karim (2).....?  
 Tarek (3).....  
 Karim Why do you think they are heroes?  
 Tarek (4).....  
 Karim I think we can learn from the internet.  
 Tarek (5).....?  
 Karim I mean we don't need teachers because we have the internet.  
 Tarek I don't agree with you.

## اختياري على الكلمات

### 3. Choose the correct answer from

1. A sport with seven players who score by throwing the ball into a goal.....  
 a. football                      b. tennis                      c. handball                      d. table tennis
2. A woman or a girl means.....  
 a. female                      b. male                      c. wild                      d. animal
3. A.....is a person that people admire for doing good or brave things.  
 a. killer                      b. zero                      c. hero                      d. hater
4. A.....is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something.  
 a. episode                      b. email                      c. competition                      d. queue
5. A sports.....is someone who teaches people how to play a sport.  
 a. team                      b. diver                      c. pilot                      d. coach
6. A person who gives money to help people or places is a.....  
 a. poet                      b. thief                      c. patron                      d. petrol
7. The opposite of lose is.....  
 a. win                      b. meet                      c. miss                      d. kiss
8. Younger people under 18 means.....  
 a. senior                      b. junior                      c. aged                      d. elderly
9. A.....does experiments and finds out how things work.  
 a. diver                      b. driver                      c. river                      d. scientist
10. A.....is a doctor who does operations.  
 a. surgeon                      b. oculist                      c. farmer                      d. engineer
11. ....means older or more advance.  
 a. Senior                      b. Junior                      c. Dead                      d. Killed
12. The.....is the area outside the city with a lot of farms and nature.  
 a. countryside                      b. city                      c. town                      d. oceans
13. A.....is an organization that gives money, food and clothes to the poor.  
 a. cinema                      b. club                      c. charity                      d. restaurant

14. An injury made by something hard is a.....  
a. hat                      b. bat                      c. cup                      d. cut
15. An.....is a disease that affects part of your body.  
a. disease                      b. infection                      c. election                      d. cut
16. A natural.....is a terrible event such as an earthquake.  
a. well                      b. disaster                      c. eye                      d. grass
17. A.....is someone who works for no money to help people.  
a. volunteer                      b. professional                      c. amateur                      d. oculist
18. Something serious or dangerous means an.....  
a. emergency                      b. rain                      c. flood                      d. drought
19. ....are the parts of the body that we use to breathe.  
a. eyes                      b. ears                      c. glasses                      d. lungs
20. A.....something we use to move water or air in a particular direction.  
a. jump                      b. dumb                      c. pump                      d. light
21. Your.....pumps blood around the body.  
a. heart                      b. finger                      c. leg                      d. hurt
22. The.....tells the parts of the body what to do.  
a. plain                      b. play                      c. brain                      d. train
23. ....is to feel happy about something you have done.  
a. angry                      b. frightened                      c. wild                      d. proud
24. ....means very brave or great.  
a. Lazy                      b. Heroic                      c. Hen                      d. Hate
25. A person who organizes people in a company or business is a.....  
a. manager                      b. assistant                      c. dentist                      d. oculist
26. ....means frightened or afraid.  
a. Scared                      b. Scarf                      c. Sky                      d. Skill
27. People who collect rubbish are called rubbish.....  
a. collectors                      b. buyers                      c. sellers                      d. sailors
28. A hero.....other people.  
a. kills                      b. kidnap                      c. hijack                      d. help
29. She is a nurse who studied at the Faculty of.....  
a. Nursing                      b. Nursery                      c. Nations                      d. Motions
30. ....is important for any country.  
a. Death                      b. Education                      c. Theft                      d. Thieves
31. ....are brave people because they save people's lives.  
a. Robbers                      b. Hunters                      c. Firefighters                      d. Fireworks
32. The city would be.....without rubbish collectors.  
a. funny                      b. happy                      c. interesting                      d. terrible
33. I use my .....to look up new words.  
a. dictionary                      b. knife                      c. trousers                      d. desk
34. He didn't visit them for many.....  
a. year                      b. day                      c. season                      d. reasons



## اختياري على الجرامر

## Choose the correct answer from

1. She used to.....long hair.  
a. have                      b. having                      c. has                      d. had
2. He didn't.....to arrive late.  
a. used                      b. use                      c. uses                      d. using
3. She is used to.....the poor.  
a. help                      b. helps                      c. helped                      d. helping
4. What did he use to.....?  
a. did                      b. does                      c. doing                      d. do
5. A knife is used.....cutting meat.  
a. to                      b. for                      c. by                      d. off
6. ....he use to watch TV? - Yes, he did.  
a. Was                      b. Is                      c. Does                      d. Did
7. He used to.....clever when he was young.  
a. be                      b. being                      c. do                      d. doing
8. He used to..... clever things when he was young.  
a. be                      b. being                      c. do                      d. doing
9. I didn't ..... to want to have a nice house.  
a. used                      b. uses                      c. using                      d. use
10. Did he use to ..... French?  
a. study                      b. studied                      c. studying                      d. studies
11. He used to smoke ,but now he ..... smoke.  
a. doesn't                      b. don't                      c. isn't                      d. wasn't
12. He used to be lazy , but now he.....  
a. is                      b. isn't                      c. don't                      d. doesn't
13. Are your children used to ..... a lot?  
a. walk                      b. walks                      c. walked                      d. walking
14. She used to.....mistakes.  
a. make                      b. makes                      c. made                      d. making
15. Did you.....to stay up late?  
a. used                      b. uses                      c. using                      d. use
16. I .....to the museum last month.  
a. go                      b. will go                      c. goes                      d. went
17. When.....Dina's birthday?  
a. do                      b. did                      c. was                      d. does
18. They.....TV an hour ago.  
a. watched                      b. watch                      c. are watching                      d. will watch
19. I went.....yesterday.  
a. swim                      b. swam                      c. swims                      d. swimming

20. What did Adam.....when he arrived?

- a. did                      b. doing                      c. does                      d. do

21. How did you.....when you saw the lion yesterday?

- a. feel                      b. felt                      c. feels                      d. feeling

22. I wrote the e-mail.....

- a. now                      b. last week                      c. tomorrow                      d. next

23. He .....born in 2010.

- a. was                      b. are                      c. did                      d. do

24. When I was young, I always.....football.

- a. play                      b. plays                      c. playing                      d. played

25. ....ready for the exam last week?

- a. Did                      b. Were                      c. Do                      d. Are

26. How did you go to school? - I .....by car.

- a. go                      b. going                      c. will go                      d. went

27. No, he didn't.....Aswan last year.

- a. visit                      b. visited                      c. go                      d. went

28. When did you have your last math lesson? - We .....it at 2 o'clock.

- a. had                      b. have                      c. will have                      d. has

29. The ship sank because there..... a terrible storm.

- a. are                      b. is                      c. was                      d. were

30. How.....your weekend?

- a. did                      b. does                      c. was                      d. do



## Unit (4)

historic	تاريخي	statue	تمثال
arch	قنطرة	stadium	ستاد
castle	قلعة	ruins	بقايا
mosque	مسجد	awesome	رائع
museum	متحف	entrance	مدخل
pyramid	هرم	view	منظر طبيعي
theatre	مسرح	ancient	قديم
temple	معبد	facts	حقائق
pot	أناء	tools	أدوات
coin	عملة معدنية	vase	فازة
mask	قناع	bowl	سلطانية
figure	تمثال	ring	خاتم
necklace	قلادة / عقد	clay	صلصال
papyrus	ورق البردي	wood	خشب
tourism	السياحة	company	شركة
tourists	السياح	pollution	تلوث
environment	البيئة	local	محلي
damage	يدمر	needle	مسلة
pharaoh	فرعون	subheading	عنوان فرعي
heading	عنوان رئيسي	debate	جدال / مناقشة

### Exercises

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from

1. What did the Ancient Egyptians use to paint their eyes?

- a. mirrors                      b. pens                      c. books                      d. brushes

2. What else did they use mirrors for?

- a. protecting eyes                      b. writing                      c. sleeping                      d. reading

3. What were the mirrors made from?

- a. plastic                      b. paper                      c. metal                      d. gold

4. What did mirrors keep away?

- a. insects                      b. air                      c. water                      d. food

## 2. Complete the following dialogue:

- Atef      Where did you go on holiday?  
 Hamdy    (1).....  
 Atef      (2).....?  
 Hamdy    I went by car.  
 Atef      (3).....?  
 Hamdy    I went with my family.  
 Atef      What places did you visit?  
 Hamdy    (4).....  
 Atef      Did you visit the Tower?  
 Hamdy    (5).....

## اختياري على الكلمات

## 3. Choose the correct answer from

1. A.....is a place where you can watch a sports match.  
 a. theatre      b. cinema      c. stadium      d. funfair
2. To.....is to put your hand on something.  
 a. breathe      b. touch      c. smash      d. crash
3. A.....is what you can see from the top of something.  
 a. clue      b. review      c. view      d. straw
4. ....means very old.  
 a. Modern      b. New      c. Fashionable      d. Ancient
5. An.....is an entrance to another place or a curved part of a building.  
 a. arm      b. art      c. uniform      d. arch
6. A.....is a place where Muslims pray.  
 a. church      b. temple      c. mosque      d. bark
7. A.....is a place with very strong walls.  
 a. garden      b. castle      c. fossil      d. pools
8. The broken parts that are left of a building or a city are.....  
 a. ruins      b. fun      c. fans      d. runs
9. ....means concerning history or connected to the past.  
 a. Historic      b. New      c. Future      d. Funny
10. Very good or amazing means.....  
 a. sum      b. some      c. awake      d. awesome
11. A.....is a person who can show you around a place.  
 a. dentist      b. oculist      c. surgeon      d. guide
21. An ancient Egyptian game that looked like chess is called.....  
 a. sunset      b. sunrise      c. Senet      d. send
13. A.....is a kind of jewellery that you wear around your neck.  
 a. ring      b. watch      c. necklace      d. glasses



14. ....is a type of paper that was used in ancient Egypt.  
a. Wooden                      b. Papyrus                      c. Ink                      d. Oil
15. A.....is a pattern used to decorate something.  
a. bottle                      b. bottom                      c. button                      d. design
16. A type of mud is called.....  
a. clay                      b. clue                      c. flew                      d. true
17. A.....is a pot used for holding flowers.  
a. van                      b. Fan                      c. ban                      d. vase
18. A piece of equipment that you can use to make or repair things is a .....  
a. tool                      b. fuel                      c. mall                      d. hole
19. A.....is something that people wear to cover or protect their face.  
a. task                      b. mask                      c. gloves                      d. wipe
20. A.....is a model of a person or a picture of someone.  
a. figure                      b. uniform                      c. form                      d. document
21. .... are small, flat pieces of metal used as money.  
a. Calls                      b. Cools                      c. Cons                      d. Coins
22. A.....means a business that makes money by producing or selling things.  
a. company                      b. library                      c. nursing                      d. uniform
23. A.....is when different people with different ideas talk about something.  
a. drama                      b. debate                      c. unity                      d. equal
24. To.....is to have a bad effect on.  
a. help                      b. support                      c. encourage                      d. damage
25. ....brings money for Egypt.  
a. Tourism                      b. Tourists                      c. Players                      d. Farmers
26. We should keep our.....clean.  
a. environment                      b. rubbish                      c. litter                      d. stones
27. Taking.....from the lake will damage the environment.  
a. oil                      b. gas                      c. water                      d. juice
28. You.....drink dirty water.  
a. should                      b. must                      c. shall                      d. mustn't
29. I need a.....to sew the clothes.  
a. pencil                      b. knife                      c. sword                      d. needle
30. ....is bad for the environment.  
a. Pollution                      b. Silence                      c. Love                      d. Work
31. ....come to Egypt to visit famous places.  
a. Horses                      b. Birds                      c. Tourists                      d. Terrorists

## اختياري على الجرامر

## 3. Choose the correct answer from

1. My mobile rang while I .....my homework.  
a. do                                      b. does                                      c. did                                      d. was doing
2. He was driving to work when the accident.....  
a. happen                                      b. happened                                      c. happens                                      d. will happen
3. While.....my homework, I slept.  
a. was doing                                      b. were doing                                      c. did                                      d. doing
4. What were you.....yesterday morning?  
a. do                                      b. did                                      c. doing                                      d. was doing
5. Were you sleeping when the clock.....off?  
a. go                                      b. goes                                      c. going                                      d. went
6. Was it.....when you left school?  
a. rain                                      b. rains                                      c. rained                                      d. raining
7. While we.....the math test, the fire alarm went off.  
a. doing                                      b. was doing                                      c. did                                      d. were doing
8. While she was studying, her brother.....TV.  
a. watched                                      b. was watching                                      c. watch                                      d. watches
9. She wasn't eating when her father.....  
a. call                                      b. calls                                      c. calling                                      d. called
10. They.....Aswan last week.  
a. visit                                      b. visits                                      c. will visit                                      d. visited
11. ....he arrived, they were having lunch.  
a. While                                      b. When                                      c. During                                      d. On
12. When she visited her friend, she was.....  
a. swim                                      b. swam                                      c. swims                                      d. swimming
13. As he was carrying the vase, he -----it on the floor.  
a. drops                                      b. dropped                                      c. had dropped                                      d. was dropping
14. My sister-----the room while I was making tea.  
a. cleaned                                      b. was cleaning                                      c. is cleaning                                      d. cleans
15. ....my holiday, I visited many places .  
a. When                                      b. While                                      c. During                                      d. Where



## تمارين على سؤال التصحيح جرامر الوحدات 3 &amp; 4

## 5. Complete the sentences with the correct form:

1. When I was a boy, I .....(walk) a mile to school every day.
2. When did you .....(met) your wife?
3. I didn't .....(saw) you yesterday.
4. We .....(were) not hear the telephone an hour ago.
5. Samy..... (lives) in that house when he was young.
6. I .....(am) at work yesterday.
7. They used to .....(do) lazy.
8. My father .....(use) to smoke badly.
9. He used to .....(playing) in the street.
10. He used to have long hair, but now he .....(isn't).
11. He used to be lazy, but now he .....(wasn't).
12. Did he .....(used) to study hard?
13. He .....(writes) the email and sent it.
14. They used to play well, but now they.....(aren't).
15. ....(Did) he helpful when they asked for help?
16. She.....(cooks) lunch yesterday.
17. While he .....(took) a bath, his friend arrived.
18. When he was .....(work) in the kitchen, he dropped the glass of water.
19. While he was sleeping, his sister .....(watch) TV.
20. What .....(was) you doing when the light went out?
21. Was it .....(rain) when you left school?
22. My sister .....(arrives) while I was doing my homework.
23. You must.....(helps) the poor.
24. People.....(must) swim here, It is not allowed.
25. You mustn't.....(swimming) in this area.
26. You .....(shouldn't) have a shower before you swim.
27. Must he go out now? - No, he.....(must).

## أهم موضوعات البراجرافات والايمل

## 1. "Your best friend"

*I have many friends, but my best friend is called Hassan. He is 13 years old. He is in the same school with me. He is good at English and Maths. He has got curly hair. He is tall and has got glasses because he can't see well. He has a good personality. I love him very much. He is very kind and helpful. When I had an accident, he helped me every day. He helped me to get my things out at school. We play games together. We study together and sometimes go shopping.*

## 6. Write an email of about ninety (90) words on:

## 2. "Your hero"

From	Basant@gmail.com
To	Abdo@gmail.com
subject	My hero
<p>Dear Abdo,</p> <p>How are you? I am writing this email to tell you about my hero. My hero is Mohamed Salah. He is a great footballer. I admire him because he has many good qualities. He is good at scoring goals. He is fast and clever. I also love him because he does many good things. He donates money to charities. He also helps poor people and gives them money. He likes talking to his fans. He is always kind and has a big smile on his face. He has many hobbies as playing video games.</p> <p>Yours, Basant</p>	



## 3. " Random acts of kindness"

From	Sandy@gmail.com
To	Sila@gmail.com
subjects	Random acts of kindness
<p>Dear Sila,</p> <p>I am happy to send you this email. How are you and your family. I write to tell you about some random acts of kindness. I decided to do some random acts of kindness. I bought some flowers for my grandmother. I also bought some books for my grandfather. They were surprised and happy. They thanked me. I also helped an old man to cross the street. When I saw an old woman on the street corner, I bought her a sandwich. She was very happy and thanked me. I was very happy to see people happy and pleased. "</p> <p>Yours, Sandy</p>	

## مراجعات شهر نوفمبر للصف الثاني الإعدادي ٢٠٢٤

## Unit 3: Great jobs

1

## المفردات Vocabulary

handball	لعبة كرة اليد	win (won)	يفوز
hero	بطل	charity	جمعية خيرية
junior	ناشئ / مبتدئ	the countryside	الريف
junior team	فريق الناشئين	great grandmother	الجدة الكبرى (والدة الجد أو الجدة)
senior	كبير في السن / راشد	great grandfather	الجد الأكبر (والد الجد أو الجدة)
senior team	الفريق الأول	female	أنثى / مؤنث
emergency	حالة الطوارئ	volunteer	متطوع
natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية	body	جسم
scared	خائف / مرعوب	sure	متأكد
scary	مخيف / مرعب	heroic	بطولي
proud	فخور	nursing	تمريض
competition	مسابقة / منافسة	manager	مدير
the final	المباراة النهائية	patient	شخص مريض

2

## وظائف Jobs

scientist	عالم	nuclear scientist	عالم نووي
surgeon	طبيب جراح	street cleaners	عمال نظافة الشوارع
patron	راع / كفيل	rubbish collectors	عمال جمع القمامة
sports coach	مدرب رياضي		

3

## Verbs and nouns that come together

do a job	يؤدي وظيفة / يقوم بمهمة	start a charity	ينشئ مؤسسة خيرية
do/ play a sport	يلعب رياضة	win a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
do experiments	يجري تجارب عملية	get a prize	يحصل علي جائزة
start school	يبدأ الدراسة	get a job	يحصل علي وظيفة

4

## Parts of the body

In your head		In your body	
brain	جرح	heart	القلب
eyes	العينان	lungs	الرئتان
mouth	الفم	stomach	المعدة



5

## Nouns &amp; Verbs

Noun		Verb	
cut	جرح	cut	يجرح / يقطع
pump	مضخة	pump	يضخ
plant	نبات	plant	يزرع
infection	عدوي	infect	يعدي

6

## تعريفات Definitions

<b>handball</b>	a sport with seven players in a team. They score by throwing the ball into a goal	كرة اليد
<b>competition</b>	an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something	مسابقة / بطولة
<b>sports coach</b>	someone who teaches people how to play or improve in a sport	مدرب رياضي
<b>junior</b>	for younger people	الناشئين (أقل من ١٨ سنة)
<b>senior</b>	for older people	الشباب (أكبر من ١٨ سنة)
<b>surgeon</b>	a special doctor who knows how to look inside a person's body to help people who are ill	جراح
<b>scientist</b>	someone who does experiments to study and find out about how things work	عالم
<b>patron</b>	a person who gives money to help people or places	راع / كفيل
<b>hero</b>	a person that people admire because they have done something very brave or good	بطل
<b>female</b>	being a woman or a girl	أنثى / مؤنث
<b>princess</b>	the daughter of a king or queen	أميرة
<b>charity</b>	an organisation that gives money, food, etc. to people who are in need	جمعية خيرية
<b>countryside</b>	the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature	الريف
<b>volunteer</b>	someone who works for no money to help people	متطوع
<b>natural disaster</b>	a terrible event, such as an earthquake	كارثة طبيعية
<b>lungs</b>	they take in air and help us to breathe	الرئتين
<b>brain</b>	it tells the parts of our body what to do	المخ
<b>heart</b>	it pumps blood around the body	قلب
<b>scared</b>	frightened or afraid that something bad could happen	خائف / مرعوب

## أهم أسئلة المفردات علي الوحدة الثالثة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our teachers are very ..... . They never get nervous يتعصب easily. أسوان ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) young (b) slow (c) patient (d) brave
2. In 2006, Dr Magdy Yacoub started a charity to help children with ..... problems. أسبوط ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) leg (b) heart (c) eye (d) cold
3. Anas was very ....., so she wasn't afraid of the dog. السويس ٢٠٢٣  
 (a) sad (b) glad (c) brave (d) big
4. Dr Magdy Yacoub looks after children with heart ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) experiments (b) competitions (c) problems (d) trips
5. Samira Mousa was Egypt's first female ..... scientist. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) nuclear (b) chemistry (c) biology (d) Arabic
6. Aya is a nurse. She helps her ..... to get better. الغربية ٢٠٢٣  
 (a) illnesses (b) patients (c) medicines (d) diseases
7. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) surgeon (b) patron (c) scientist (d) coach
8. The ..... pumps blood around the body. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) heart (b) stomach (c) hand (d) mouth
9. The ..... is the daughter of the king or the queen. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) patron (b) prince (c) princess (d) scientist
10. A ..... teaches people how to play or improve in a sport. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) scientist (b) sports coach (c) nurse (d) worker
11. A ..... give money to people or places. مرسى مطروح ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) patron (b) scientist (c) surgeon (d) coach
12. A ..... helps people who are poor, sick or have no money. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) chair (b) charity (c) shoe (d) ship
13. The nurse was a ..... . She saved a lot of people. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣  
 (a) beggar (b) manager (c) servant (d) hero
14. My brother is 12 years old. He wants to join the ..... team. أسوان ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) junior (b) senior (c) old (d) small
15. Lina's cousin is in hospital with eye ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) infection (b) part (c) nature (d) look
16. Dr Magdy Yacoub ..... a charity to help poor people. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) started (b) finished (c) continued (d) ended
17. .... are the parts of our body that fill with air and help us to breathe. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) Ears (b) Lungs (c) Eyes (d) Legs
18. In 2020, doctors and nurses helped many ill people when there was a health ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٢



- (a) emerge (b) emergent (c) emergency (d) urgent  
19. .... is usually made of gold. الأزر بالأكضر ٢٠٢٢
- (a) Sheets (b) Information (c) Jewellery (d) Furniture  
20. The football has no air inside it. I need a ..... to fill it. مرسى مطروح ٢٠٢٢
- (a) cut (b) plant (c) pump (d) box  
21. He was a ..... for the Red Crescent الهلال الأحمر . دمياط ٢٠٢٣
- (a) beggar (b) charity (c) donation (d) volunteer  
22. Dirty water from a river can ..... you if you drink it. جنوب سيناء ٢٠٢٢
- (a) infect (b) enjoy (c) clean (d) mend  
23. The ..... tells the parts of our body what to do. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
- (a) heart (b) brain (c) eye (d) stomach  
24. You can only open this door in a/ an ....., such as a fire. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
- (a) emergency (b) charity (c) pleasure (d) organisation  
25. A/ An ..... is an organisation that gives money, food, etc. to people who بني سويف ٢٠٢٢
- (a) emergency (b) charity (c) countryside (d) university

## GRAMMAR

1

### The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

#### ١ التكوين

##### التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل

يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط (the past simple tense) من التصريف الثاني للفعل بإضافة **d** أو **ed** أو **ied** للفعل  
إذا كان فعل عادي (منتظم) مثل :

Ex: play → played

Ex: help → helped

أما إذا كان فعل شاذ (غير منتظم) فلا نضيف له **d** أو **ed** أو **ied** ويحفظ كما هو مثل :

الفعل	التصريف الثاني
do	يفعل did
sit	يجلس sat
build	يبني built
drive	يقود drove
swim	يسبح swam
have	يمتلك had

الفعل	التصريف الثاني
buy	يشترى bought
can	يستطيع could
go	يذهب went
eat	يأكل ate
see	يري saw
read	يقرأ read

#### ٢ الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي.

Ex: He visited his uncle last week.

## ③ الكلمات الدالة عليه

✍ يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية: ✍

yesterday	أمس	in (2010)	في عام ٢٠١٠
المدة الزمنية + ago	منذ	once (upon a time)	ذات مرة
When I was (young/ little),	عندما كنت صغيراً،	in the past	في الماضي
last (night/ week/ month/ year) (الليلة / الأسبوع / الشهر / السنة) الماضية			

✍ Ex: I went to the cinema last night.

## ④ النفي

✍ ينفي زمن الماضي البسيط كما يلي: ✍



مصدر الفعل + did not + الفاعل

الفاعل + was not/ were not

✍ Ex: I didn't go to school yesterday.

## ⑤ تكوين السؤال

✍ أولاً: السؤال بـ (هل): ✍



? .... مصدر الفعل + الفاعل + Did

? ... + الفاعل + Was/ Were

✍ Ex: Did you go to school yesterday?

☞ Yes, I did.

☞ No, I didn't.

✍ Ex: Was he at the cinema yesterday?

☞ Yes, he was.

☞ No, he wasn't.



✍ ثانياً: السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام) فنضع كلمة الاستفهام قبل الصيغ السابقة: ✍

? .... مصدر الفعل + الفاعل + did + كلمة الاستفهام

? ... + الفاعل + was/ were + كلمة الإستفهام

✍ Ex: Where did you go yesterday?

☞ I went to the cinema.

✍ Ex: Where were you yesterday?

☞ I was at the cinema.



2

## إعتاد أن Used to

## ① الاستخدام

✍ نستخدم التعبير (used to + inf.) للتعبير عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي ولم تعد تحدث الآن.

✍ Ex: When he was young, he used to play football in the street.

## ② التكوين

الفاعل + used to + inf.

اعتاد أن



- ✍ **Ex:** When I was young, I **used to** ride a bike.  
 ✍ **Ex:** He **used to** live in America, but now he lives in Paris.

### ③ التثنية

لم يعتاد أن **didn't use to + inf.**

لم يعتاد أن

- ✍ **Ex:** I **didn't use to** eat a lot when I was young.

### ④ السؤال

① السؤال بـ (هل):

**Did + فاعل + use to + inf. ...?**

هل اعتاد أن

- ✍ **Ex:** Did he **use to** read books when he was a child?  
 ☞ Yes, he did. ☞ No, he didn't.

② السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

**did + فاعل + use to + inf. ...? + كلمة استفهام**

- ✍ **Ex:** What **did** he **use to** do when he was young?  
 ☞ He **used to** play football in the street.

## أهم أسئلة القواعد علي الوحدة الثالثة

☞ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My uncle Rashid ..... born in 1961. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) were (b) is (c) was (d) am
- When I was seven, I ..... to primary school. بني سويف ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) go (b) goes (c) going (d) went
- In 2016, a shark ..... Omar and he lost a leg. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) is attacking (b) attacking (c) attacked (d) attacks
- There ..... a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) didn't (b) weren't (c) isn't (d) wasn't
- ..... your friends ready for the exam last week? البحيرة ٢٠٢٣  
 (a) Was (b) Did (c) Do (d) Were
- My team ..... the cup in 2018. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) wins (b) won (c) win (d) winning
- A: Were you all ready for the exam? B: Yes, ..... الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) we did (b) I was (c) we were (d) I did
- Ali ..... at school yesterday. المنيا ٢٠٢٣  
 (a) didn't (b) wasn't (c) isn't (d) doesn't
- Did Mohamed to the shops yesterday? القليوبية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) goes (b) go (c) went (d) gone
- Did Hassan ..... to live in Cairo? الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

- (a) to use (b) using (c) used (d) use  
11. They used ..... a small car. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
- (a) to having (b) to have (c) have (d) having  
12. Where ..... live before you moved to Alexandria? الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
- (a) are you (b) do you (c) you used to (d) did you use to  
13. My uncle ..... a firefighter, but now he is a police officer. قنا ٢٠٢٣
- (a) used to be (b) uses to be (c) were (d) is  
14. I didn't ..... get up late when I was a pupil. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
- (a) used to (b) use to (c) use (d) used  
15. .... you use to eat many sweets when you were a child? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
- (a) Did (b) Do (c) Are (d) Have  
16. A: ..... you use to visit Alexandria? B: Yes, I did. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
- (a) Did (b) Do (c) Does (d) Are  
17. What did you use to ..... at primary school? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
- (a) learnt (b) learns (c) learning (d) learn  
18. Mariam ..... money to a charity, but now she does. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
- (a) didn't use to give (b) gave (c) doesn't give (d) use to give  
19. Did he use to ..... French? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
- (a) study (b) studied (c) studying (d) studies  
20. What did he use to .....? الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
- (a) did (b) does (c) doing (d) do  
21. Where did your grandparents ..... when they were young? الغربية ٢٠٢٢
- (a) lived (b) use to live (c) used to live (d) living  
22. When I was young, I used to ..... chess. بني سويف ٢٠٢٢
- (a) plays (b) playing (c) play (d) played  
23. Did he ..... to walk to work? الغربية ٢٠٢٢
- (a) used (b) uses (c) using (d) use  
24. Dina ..... give money to charity, but now she does. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
- (a) didn't use (b) used to (c) didn't use to (d) used

## Unit 4: Into the past

1

## Vocabulary المفردات

arch	قنطرة / قوس	mirror	مرآة
castle	قلعة	company	شركة
mosque	مسجد	tool	أداة
museum	متحف	vase	فازة
pyramid	هرم	pot	وعاء / قدر
ruins	آثار (بقايا)	bowl	سلطانية
stadium	استاد	papyrus	ورق البردي



statue	تمثال	mask	قناع
temple	معبد	figure	تمثال / نموذج (لشخص)
theatre	مسرح	ring	خاتم
entrance	مدخل	historic	تاريخي
amazing	مذهل	holiday companies	شركات تنظيم السياحة
ancient	أثري (قديم جدا)	interesting	شيق
guide	مرشد سياحي	necklace	عقد
view	منظر طبيعي (من مكان عالي)	coin	عملة معدنية
awesome	مذهل	tourism	السياحة
senet	السينيت (لعبة مصرية تشبه الشطرنج)	pollution	التلوث
object	شيء / قطعة أثرية	environment	البيئة
keep away	يبعد	damage	يتلف
clay	صلصال	ruler	حاكم
insect	حشرة	weigh	يزن
wood	خشب	protect	يحمي

## 2

## تعريفات Definitions

<b>stadium</b>	a place where you can watch a sports match	استاد رياضي
<b>arch</b>	an entrance to another place	قنطرة
<b>mosque</b>	a place where Muslims pray	مسجد
<b>castle</b>	a place which has very strong walls	قلعة
<b>guide</b>	a person who can show you round a place	مرشد سياحي
<b>ancient</b>	very old	أثري (قديم جدا)
<b>view</b>	what you can see from the top of something	منظر طبيعي
<b>figure</b>	a model of a person	نموذج / تمثال (لشخص)
<b>mask</b>	something people wear to cover or protect their face	قناع
<b>necklace</b>	jewellery you wear around your neck	عقد
<b>vase</b>	a pot used for holding flowers	فازة / زهرية
<b>senet</b>	an ancient Egyptian game	السينيت (لعبة تشبه الشطرنج)

## أهم أسئلة المفردات علي الوحدة الرابعة

☺ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's a good idea to get a/ an ..... to tell you about the history.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

**a** guide                      **b** policeman                      **c** doctor                      **d** nurse

2. .... are places that have high and strong walls.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

**a** Offices                      **b** Castles                      **c** Hospitals                      **d** Parks

3. Last year, I visited Karnak with my family. We saw the ..... temples. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) ancient (b) new (c) difficult (d) careless
4. Last week, I went to the ..... to watch the play. السويس ٢٠٢٣  
 (a) theatre (b) castle (c) temple (d) museum
5. Muslims build ..... to pray. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) statues (b) ruins (c) castles (d) mosques
6. Lots of people went to the ..... to watch the final match. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) museum (b) theatre (c) temple (d) stadium
7. We should ..... our temples and ruins. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) steal (b) destroy (c) protect (d) damage
8. Egypt has many ..... sites that attract many tourists. البحيرة ٢٠٢٣  
 (a) concerning (b) ugly (c) national (d) historic
9. This ..... has lots of ancient objects. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) museum (b) stadium (c) mosque (d) theatre
10. A/ An ..... can be an entrance to another place. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) arch (b) wall (c) ruin (d) castle
11. It's important to ..... our historic places. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) protect (b) prevent (c) damage (d) cut
12. I love going to ..... places such as museums and ancient places. مرسي مطروح ٢٠٢٣  
 (a) historic (b) culture (c) carriage (d) history
13. We walked under a big ..... before we entered the museum. مرسي مطروح ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) arch (b) castle (c) stadium (d) theatre
14. Can you tell me the ..... of the ticket, please? الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) culture (b) vase (c) price (d) figure
15. Senet boxes have 30 ..... . الغربية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) circles (b) squares (c) figures (d) vases
16. A ..... is a piece of metal used as money. المنيا ٢٠٢٣  
 (a) pot (b) bowl (c) can (d) coin
17. A ..... is something people wear to cover or protect their faces. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) vase (b) coin (c) mask (d) clay
18. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... and bowls for making food in. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) bits (b) pots (c) bats (d) puts
19. A ..... is a pot used for holding flowers. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) vase (b) figure (c) mask (d) necklace
20. You can see yourself in the ..... . القليوبية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) sofa (b) bookcase (c) mirror (d) carpet
21. Ancient Egyptians used ..... for writing. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣  
 (a) paper (b) cotton (c) papyrus (d) wood
22. Don't play football here or you might ..... that car. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) hurt (b) damage (c) repair (d) injury
23. A ..... is the most important person in the country. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢



- (a) router (b) realer (c) roller (d) ruler  
 24. Parents should teach their children to ..... well. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) behave (b) damage (c) cause (d) remain  
 25. We sew clothes using a ..... الغربية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) needle (b) map (c) stone (d) lamp

## GRAMMAR

1

### يجب/لا يجب must/ mustn't

نستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام بفعل شيء ما (في المضارع).

must + inf.

يجب أن

✎ Ex: Drivers **must follow** the traffic lights.

✎ Ex: I **must study** hard.

نستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (لا يجب أن) للتعبير عن النهي والتحريم والمنع (في المضارع).

mustn't + inf.

لا يجب أن

✎ Ex: You **mustn't talk** in the library.

✎ Ex: You **mustn't be** late for school.

نسأل عن الإلزام بالصيغة التالية:

inf...? + فاعل + must/ mustn't + (كلمة الإستفهام)

✎ Ex: Must I **park** here?

☞ Yes, you **must**. ☞ No, you **mustn't**.

2

### زمن الماضي المستمر The past continuous tense

#### ① التكوين

يتكون زمن الماضي المستمر (the past continuous tense) من:



✎ Ex: They **were playing** tennis at 10 o'clock yesterday.

#### ② الاستخدام

١. يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي.

✎ Ex: I **was watching** TV at 6 o'clock yesterday.

٢. يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي ثم جاء حدث آخر فقطعه (فيكون الحدث الذي بدأ أولا واستمر ماضي مستمر، والحدث الذي جاء ثانيا وقطعه ماضي بسيط).

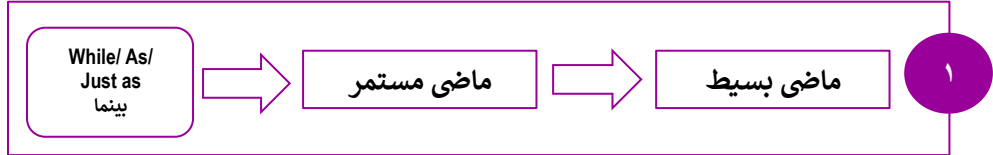
✎ Ex: While I **was studying**, the light went out (الكهرباء قطعت).

٣. يستخدم للتعبير عن حدثين كانا **مستمرين** في نفس الوقت في الماضي ولم يقطع أحدهما الآخر ولذلك يجب وضع كلا الحدثين في **زمن الماضي المستمر**.

✎ Ex: While I **was doing** my homework, my mother **was cooking**.

### ملحوظة:

أدوات الربط التالية تميز بين الحدث الطويل والحدث القصير:



✎ Ex: While I **was doing** my homework, my father **came**.



✎ Ex: When my father **came**, I **was doing** my homework.

### ٣ النفي

✎ ينفي زمن الماضي المستمر كما يلي:

**الفاعل + was/ were + not + verb + ing**

✎ Ex: We **weren't watching** TV at seven o'clock yesterday.

### ٤ السؤال

✎ أولاً: السؤال بـ (هل):

**Was/ Were + الفاعل + verb + ing....?**

✎ Ex: **Were** you **watching** TV at seven o'clock yesterday?

☺ Yes, I **was**.

☹ No, I **wasn't**.

✎ ثانياً: السؤال بـ (كلمة إستفهام) فنضع كلمة الإستفهام قبل الصيغة السابقة:

**كلمة الإستفهام + was/ were + الفاعل + verb + ing....?**

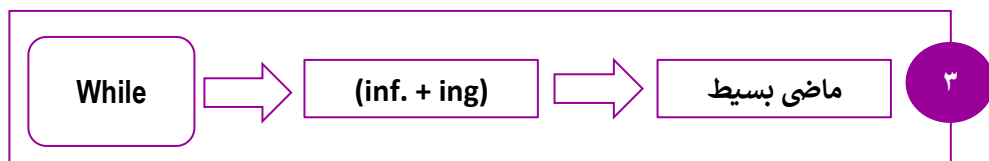
✎ Ex: What **were** you **doing** when I phoned you yesterday?

☺ I **was doing** my homework.

### ١

**Add to your knowledge أضيف إلي معلوماتك**

١. إذا لم يأتي بعد (While) فاعل فإننا نضيف للفعل (ing):



✎ Ex: While **running**, Reham fell down.

٢. قد تأتي (During) مكان (While) ولكن لابد أن يأتي بعدها إسم.

✎ Ex: During the night, it rained heavily.



## أهم أسئلة القواعد على الوحدة الرابعة

☺ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You ..... eat or drink in the school library. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) can (b) must (c) mustn't (d) should
2. A: ..... I park here? B: Yes, you must. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) Must (b) Have (c) Were (d) Does
3. A: Must I go now? B: No, you ..... سوهاج ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) can (b) does (c) mustn't (d) must
4. You must ..... well before you answer the questions. دمياط ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) to think (b) thinking (c) think (d) thinks
5. You ..... careful when you cut food. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) must be (b) must to (c) must not (d) must
6. You ..... touch the statues in the museum. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣  
 (a) must (b) could (c) should (d) mustn't
7. I ..... the match at 6 o'clock yesterday. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) watches (b) was watching (c) watching (d) watch
8. While John ..... home, he saw a great accident. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) driving (b) were driving (c) drive (d) was driving
9. While we ..... home, Omar phoned me. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) travelled (b) were travelling (c) travelling (d) travels
10. While Mona ..... tennis, she hurt her arm. الغربية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) plays (b) played (c) was playing (d) were playing
11. While I ..... to school, it started to rain. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) was walking (b) walking (c) walked (d) walk
12. While I ..... out rubbish, my father came. الغربية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) take (b) took (c) was taking (d) taking
13. The earthquake started while we ..... in the street. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) are walking (b) were walking (c) was walking (d) walked
14. While I was watching TV, my sister ..... to music. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣  
 (a) was listening (b) listens (c) listening (d) listened
15. While we ..... to go into the museum, I saw my friend Heba. دمياط ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) wait (b) was waiting (c) were waiting (d) waited
16. While he was running, he ..... down. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) falls (b) fall (c) fell (d) falling
17. While Sahar ..... to school, she saw a famous squash player. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢  
 (a) was walking (b) walk (c) walking (d) walked
18. While I was reading my book, the phone ..... قنا ٢٠٢٣  
 (a) rang (b) is ringing (c) rings (d) will ring

## Complete the following dialogue :

1.

**Fatma asks her friend Sarah about her favourite sport.**

- Fatma** : Hello Sara, What's your favourite sport ?  
**Sarah** : (1) .....  
**Fatma** : Who is your favourite footballer?  
**Sarah** : (2) .....  
**Fatma** : (3) ..... ?  
**Sarah** : Mo Salah plays for Liverpool.  
**Fatma** : And which is your favourite football team?  
**Sarah** : (4) .....  
**Fatma** : (5) ..... ?  
**Sarah** : Yes, they score many goals.

2.

**Rodina and Toka are talking about charities.**

- Rodina** : What are you going to do the next mid-year holiday?  
**Toka** : (1) .....  
**Rodina** : A charity ! (2) ..... ?  
**Toka** : I'm going to help the disabled old men.  
**Rodina** : (3) ..... ?  
**Toka** : I will wash their clothes and give them medicine.  
**Rodina** : Can I work for a charity with you ?  
**Toka** : (4) ..... What would you like to do ?  
**Rodina** : (5) .....  
**Toka** : Great idea ! Keeping the environment clean is so important.

3.

**Verina asks Hala about who can be a hero.**

- Verina** : Who do you think can be a hero ?  
**Hala** : I think rubbish collectors can be heroes.  
**Verina** : Sorry, I don't understand.  
**Hala** : (1) ..... , they do something very useful.  
           The city would be terrible without them. Do you agree with me ?  
**Verina** : Yes, (2) ..... (3) ..... ?  
**Hala** : I think street cleaners are also important.  
**Verina** : (4) ..... ?  
**Hala** : Because they help to keep our cities clean.  
**Verina** : So what should we do for them ?  
**Hala** : (5) .....



4.

Hoda asks Samya about her grandfather's job.

- Hoda : What's your grandfather's job ?
- Samya : (1) .....
- Hoda : (2) ..... ?
- Samya : He works in a charity.
- Hoda : What does he do there ?
- Samya : (3) .....
- Hoda : (4) ..... ?
- Samya : No, he works for no money.
- Hoda : Do you mean that he is a volunteer?
- Samya : (5) ..... I'm very proud of him.

5.

Amr asks Ali some questions about his job.

- Amr : Could I ask you some questions about your job?
- Ali : (1) .....
- Amr : Thank you. (2) ..... ?
- Ali : I'm a doctor.
- Amr : Where do you work ?
- Ali : (3) .....
- Amr : Do you like your job ?
- Ali : (4) ..... , but I feel tired.
- Amr : (5) ..... ?
- Ali : Because I work for long hours.

6.

Sama is helping a tourist to get to the Pyramids.

- Tourist : Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions ?
- Sama : (1) .....
- Tourist : (2) ..... ?
- Sama : The Pyramids are in Giza.
- Tourist : Are they far from here ?
- Sama : (3) .....
- Tourist : How can I go there ?
- Sama : (4) .....
- Tourist : (5) ..... ?
- Sama : The Ancient Egyptians built them.

7.

Mona is calling the Museum of History.

- Receptionist : Good morning. Museum of History.  
**Mona** : Good morning. (1) ..... ?  
 Receptionist : We are open from 9:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m.  
**Mona** : (2) ..... ?  
 Receptionist : No, we are open daily except Friday.  
**Mona** : Can I buy the tickets online for the museum ?  
 Receptionist : (3) .....  
**Mona** : How much does the ticket cost ?  
 Receptionist : (4) .....  
**Mona** : Just 20 pounds ! (5) .....
- 

8.

Ayman is telling Baleegh about Cleopatra's Needle.

- Ayman : I saw a picture of Cleopatra's Needle.  
**Baleegh** : Really! (1) ..... ?  
 Ayman : It's next to the River Thames in London.  
**Baleegh** : (2) ..... ?  
 Ayman : It is about 3,500 years old.  
**Baleegh** : Awesome ! How did it get to England ?  
 Ayman : (3) .....  
**Baleegh** : (4) ..... ! What's the special ship ?  
 Ayman : It's a very big ship. I think we should be proud of our history.  
**Baleegh** : (5) .....
- 

9.

Bassem is doing a research about the Stone Circles of Senegambia.

- Ahmed : What are you doing, Bassem ?  
**Bassem** : (1) .....  
 Ahmed : Where are the Stone Circles of Senegambia ?  
**Bassem** : (2) .....  
 Ahmed : Senegal and Gambia! (3) ..... ?  
**Bassem** : They are in Africa.  
 Ahmed : (4) ..... ?  
**Bassem** : Because they tell us about the people who made them and how they lived.  
 Ahmed : Can anyone visit them ?  
**Bassem** : (5) .....

**Read the following, then answer the questions:**

**1.**

We should all be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but his family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working in 2001, he worked in a special hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy helped to give people new hearts for the first time. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often used to die. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

**a. Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do you think Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children?

.....  
 .....

2. Why did Magdy Yacoub's family use to travel to many places?

.....  
 .....

3. Give a suitable title for this passage.

.....  
 .....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to .....

a. Magdy Yacoub

b. Magdy's father

c. Magdy's grandfather

d. Magdy's great grandfather

5. The underlined word "special" means .....

a. usual

b. very big

c. not usual

d. very old

6. The birthplace of Dr Magdy is .....

a. Aswan

b. Cairo

c. London

d. Bilbeis



**2.**

Objects from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. They can also show us that We use many of the same objects today!

In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. The mirrors were made of metal and had interesting designs. Where do you have mirrors in your home?

The Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food. These objects were made of clay, which came from the River Nile. While so me people were mixing ingredients in bowls, other people used stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl. How do we make bread today?

**a. Answer the following questions:**

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

.....  
.....

2. What do you think of the Ancient Egyptians?

.....  
.....

3. What did the Ancient Egyptians use mirrors for?

.....  
.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .....

- a. years                      b. objects                      c. designs                      d. mirrors

5. The underlined word "protect" means .....

- a. make                      b. attack                      c. help                      d. keep safe

6. You can look at yourself at the .....

- a. bowls                      b. mirror                      c. pots                      d. clay

3.

Every winter, thousands of tourists come to Egypt from all parts of the world. They come from Europe, Asia and Africa to spend their holiday in our great country, Egypt. Those tourists come to enjoy the sunshine of Egypt. They enjoy the wonderful beaches at Sharm El Sheikh. Most of them visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo to see Tutankhamun and his jewellery. When it is very cold in their countries, they like to visit Luxor and Aswan where they like to see the ancient treasures and temples. They also visit the pyramids and the Sphinx at Giza.

**a. Answer the following questions:**

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

.....

2. When do tourists come to Egypt ?

.....

.....

3. Where do tourists see Tutankhamun and his jewellery?

.....

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined word "it" refers to.....

- a. Luxor                      b. the weather                      c. museum                      d. Egypt

5. Tourists like to see the ancient treasures in .....

- b. Sharm El Sheikh                      b. Suez  
c. Hurghada                      d. Luxor and Aswan

6. The underline word "wonderful" means .....

- a. delicious                      b. awesome                      c. disabled                      d. messy

4.

I love historic places like Petra in Jordan. It dates to around 300 BCE, so it is more than 2000 years old ! You must buy a ticket to visit, but when you are inside, you can walk for a long way through the old city and the view from some of the higher places are awesome, but you must be careful. Our guide explained how old the temples are: they are really ancient. I really enjoyed our day there.

**a. Answer the following questions:**

1. Give the main idea of the passage.

.....

.....

2. What do you think we should do to historic places?

.....

.....

3. How old is Petra?

.....

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined word "they" refers to .....

a. Petra                      b. temples                      c. guides                      d. Jordan

5. The opposite of modern is .....

a. long                      b. new                      c. ancient                      d. ticket

6. You must buy a ..... to visit Petra.

a. ticket                      b. map                      c. blanket                      d. food



**Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :****1. "A person that you are proud of (your hero)"**

In fact , everyone has someone who he or she is proud of. My mother is a person I am very proud of. When she was younger, she used to study very hard. She wanted to be a doctor. She used to work to help pay for her studies. In 2020, there was a health emergency. Many people were in hospital. I became ill, too. I was in hospital for two weeks. She helped me and other people in the hospital. She was always very kind. She is one of the most important doctors in Cairo. I am very proud of her!

**2. "How life used to be different in ancient Egypt"**

Life in Ancient Egypt was different to today. Poor children didn't use to go to school. Children from rich families used to start school when they were about seven. Children used to enjoy playing games. When older parents died, they used to leave their houses to the sons. The Ancient Egyptians used to leave jewellery and furniture inside their houses to the daughters. They lived around the Nile River where they could grow crops. They built pyramids. You can still see these pyramids today. They knew a lot about maths, medicine and farming.

**3. "What you used or didn't use to do when you were young"**

That was so long ago, I don't remember. I used to spend time by myself. I didn't use to go out a lot. I used to do a lot of things. When I was young, I used to get up early and leave the house and go wherever I wanted to go on my bike. When I got home from school, I used to do my homework, then go out and play with all the other kids. I didn't use to help my mum with cooking. We used to live in a village when I was a kid. There didn't use to be a supermarket there. In the summers, we used to run to get ice cream. I used to go swimming every Thursday when I was young. We used to go to the same beach every summer.

**4. "An object in your home"**

I'd like to describe my favourite object in my home. It's a vase. My friend Samy bought the vase from Aswan in 2000. It is made of clay and it was made in Egypt. The vase is fantastic. It is coloured beautifully. I put fresh flowers in this vase every morning. At present, this vase is kept on my desk. It makes my desk more wonderful. This painting always reminds me of my grandfather because it is the best present I got from him. I like it very much. Paintings make walls look beautiful. So I put it on the wall of my room. I feel happy when I look at it. My grandfather bought it when I succeeded in my exams.

**5. "What you think we can do to protect the environment"**

We can help protect the environment in our everyday life. The most important way to protect the environment is to plant trees. Trees may take long to grow, but they are good for our children. We must also stop cutting down trees. We mustn't destroy gardens and forests. We must use less water when we wash or brush our teeth. To protect the environment, we can walk, use bikes or public transports instead of our cars. Cars cause a lot of air pollution. We can collect rubbish and recycle it. This helps keep the environment clean. We should search for another type of fuel to use. We can use the wind or the sun instead of oil. Our environment needs our efforts to protect it. In this way we'll live a better life.

---

**6. "Egyptian object in another country"**

The Rosetta Stone is in the British Museum in London. It was found on July 19, 1799, a French soldier discovered a stone with ancient writing near the town of Rosetta (Rashid) in the Nile Delta. The Rosetta Stone is one of the most important objects in the British Museum as it holds the key to understanding Egyptian hieroglyphs. After many years of studying the Rosetta Stone and other examples of ancient Egyptian writing, Jean-François Champollion could read hieroglyphs in 1822. The British soldiers took the stone to the British Museum in 1801. Egypt tries hard to take it back.

Name : ..... Title : Model [1] Nov. Test  
Grade : ..... Degree : ..... / .....  
Time : ..... Signature : .....

---

### A - Listening (4 Marks)

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:(4 M)

1. Marwan was born in ..... .  
a. 1949                      b. 1997                      c. 2020                      d. 1988
2. A/An ..... hit him when he was 19.  
a. train                      b. ship                      c. bus                      d. car
3. Marwan lost his ..... .  
a. arm                      b. head                      c. fingers                      d. leg
4. Marwan is an important sports ..... .  
a. doctor                      b. coach                      c. engineer                      d. scientist

### B - Language functions (5 Marks)

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :(5 M)

- Ali : Hi, Sami. Can I ask you some questions?  
Sami : Hi, Ali. Sure.  
Ali : Where..... live when they were young?  
Sami : My parents.....  
Ali : What .....?  
Sami : My grandfather worked as a farmer.  
Ali : Really? ..... ?  
Sami : Sure.He grew fruit.  
Ali : What about your grandmother?  
Sami : She ..... She was a housewife.

### C - Reading comprehension (6 Marks)

#### 3 Read the following then answer the questions:(6 M)

My name is Ali. I was born in Benha in 2006. I live in Alexandria and I am a pupil at Tahya Misr school. My favourite subject is English. I like watching football matches and reading stories. I hope to be a doctor. A doctor helps different people. I have got one sister and two brother. My father is a hotel manager. He makes sure that all rooms are clean. He also looks after tourists. My mother is a teacher at our school.



**A. Answer the following questions:**

---

1. What is this passage about?

.....

2. Why do you think Ali would like to be a doctor?

.....

3. How many people are there in Ali's family?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

---

4. Ali is a .....

a. school manager

b. TV reporter

c. student

d. scientist

5. Ali's favourite subject is .....

a. history

b. Arabic

c. German

d. English

6. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to .....

a. Ali

b. Ali's father

c. one of the students

d. the doctor

**D - Vocabulary and structure (14 Marks)**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:(10 M)**

---

1. The Egyptian team won a ..... in 2006.

a. development

b. experiment

c. competition

d. completion

2. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.

a. sports coach

b. surgeon

c. police officer

d. hero

3. A/An ..... does experiments to study and find out about how things work.

a. event

b. scientist

c. worker

d. hero

4. We walked under a big ..... before we entered the museum.

a. arch

b. statue

c. castle

d. school

5. This building became .....after an earthquake.

a. statues

b. ruins

c. tapes

d. taps

6. There are more than 2000 ..... in the museum.

a. subjects

b. projects

c. parts

d. objects

7. Tamer is not interested ..... playing football.

a. on

b. in

c. with

d. to

8. In 2006, a shark ..... Ali and he lost a leg.

a. is attacking

b. attacking

c. attacked

d. attacks

9. There ..... a hotel ten years ago.

a. was

b. have

c. do

d. does

10. Egypt's team ..... the cup in 2010.

- a. won                  b. win                  c. to win                  d. are winning

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:(4 M)**

1. I ..... (eat) fish last week. [ ..... ]
2. Who did you .....? (seeing) yesterday? [ ..... ]
3. You ..... (mustn't) study hard for the exam. [ ..... ]
4. We mustn't ..... (using) a mobile phone in class. [ ..... ]

### E - Writing (6 Marks)

**6 Write a paragraph of 90 words on:(6 M)**

## Your past habits

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

## November Test "Model [1] Answers"

### A - Listening (4 Marks)

Marwan Zakaria was born in 1988. When Marwan was 19, a car hit him and he lost a leg. But this did not stop him from wanting to be successful. He helps other people with similar problems and now he is an important scientist.

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:(4 M)

1. Marwan was born in ..... .  
a. 1949                      b. 1997                      c. 2020                      d. 1988
2. A/An ..... hit him when he was 19.  
a. train                      b. ship                      c. bus                      d. car
3. Marwan lost his ..... .  
a. arm                      b. head                      c. fingers                      d. leg
4. Marwan is an important sports ..... .  
a. doctor                      b. coach                      c. engineer                      d. scientist

### B – Language functions (5 Marks)

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue:(5 M)

- Ali : Hi, Sami. Can I ask you some questions?
- Sami : Hi, Ali. Sure.
- Ali : Where did your parents live when they were young?
- Sami : My parents lived in Tanta.
- Ali : What did your grandfather do?
- Sami : My grandfather worked as a farmer.
- Ali : Really? Did he grow fruit?
- Sami : Sure. He grew fruit
- Ali : What about your grandmother?
- Sami : She didn't work. She was a housewife.

### C – Reading comprehension (6 Marks)

#### 3 Read the following then answer the questions:(6 M)

My name is Ali. I was born in Benha in 2006. I live in Alexandria and I am a pupil at Tahya Misr school. My favourite subject is English. I like watching football matches and reading stories. I hope to be a doctor. A doctor helps different people. I have got one sister and two brother. My father is a hotel manager. He makes sure that all rooms are clean. He also looks after tourists. My mother is a teacher at our school.



**A. Answer the following questions:**

---

**1. What is this passage about?**

Ali's life.

**2. Why do you think Ali would like to be a doctor?**

A doctor helps different people

**3. How many people are there in Ali's family?**

Six persons

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

---

**4. Ali is a .....**

a. school manager

b. TV reporter

c. student

d. scientist

**5. Ali's favourite subject is .....**

a. history

b. Arabic

c. German

d. English

**6. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to .....**

a. Ali

b. Ali's father

c. one of the students

d. the doctor

**D – Vocabulary and structure (14 Marks)**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:(10 M)**

---

**1. The Egyptian team won a ..... in 2006.**

a. development

b. experiment

c. competition

d. completion

**2. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.**

a. sports coach

b. surgeon

c. police officer

d. hero

**3. A/An ..... does experiments to study and find out about how things work.**

a. event

b. scientist

c. worker

d. hero

**4. We walked under a big ..... before we entered the museum.**

a. arch

b. statue

c. castle

d. school

**5. This building became .....after an earthquake.**

a. statues

b. ruins

c. tapes

d. taps

**6. There are more than 2000 ..... in the museum.**

a. subjects

b. projects

c. parts

d. objects

**7. Tamer is not interested ..... playing football.**

a. on

b. in

c. with

d. to

**8. In 2006, a shark ..... Ali and he lost a leg.**

a. is attacking

b. attacking

c. attacked

d. attacks

**9. There ..... a hotel ten years ago.**

a. was

b. have

c. do

d. does

10 Egypt's team ..... the cup in 2010.

a. won

b. win

c. to win

d. are winning

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:(4 M)

---

1. I ..... (eat) fish last week. [ ate ]

2. Who did you .....? (seeing) yesterday? [ see ]

3. You ..... (mustn't) study hard for the exam. [ must ]

4. We mustn't ..... (using) a mobile phone in class. [ use ]

6 Write a paragraph of 90 words on:(6 M)

---

Your past habits

Any topic related to the title and correct in terms of language, punctuation and spelling is acceptable

Name : ..... Title : Model [2] Nov. Test  
Grade : ..... Degree : ..... / .....  
Time : ..... Signature : .....

---

### A - Listening (4 Marks)

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:(4 M)

---

1. Tamer is a .....  
a. footballer                      b. pilot                                      c. worker                                      d. teacher
2. He works in a.....  
a. factory                              b. school                                      c. bank                                      d. market
3. He goes to his work at .....a.m.  
a. 7:30                                      b. 4:45                                      c. 6:00                                      d. 9:15
4. Tamer always goes home at .....p.m.  
a. 3:00                                      b. 3:15                                      c. 3:30                                      d. 3:45

### B - Language functions (5 Marks)

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue:(5 M)

---

- Tamer : Hi, Sami.  
Sami : Hi, Tamer.  
Tamer : ..... to live in Cairo when you were young?  
Sami : No, I .....in Giza.  
Tamer : Did you use to ..... ?  
Sami : Yes, I used to go to school on foot.  
Tamer : What hobby did you use to do?  
Sami : I .....stories because I love reading. What about you?  
Tamer : I used to.....  
Sami : Great. Doing sport is useful.

### C - Reading comprehension (6 Marks)

#### 3 Read the following then answer the questions:(6 M)

---

My name is Basmala. I go to a prep. School. It is near my house. I go there on foot. Our teachers are kind and they help us a lot. I was not good at English last year. But Mr Omar helped me to be better. This subject is very important. Our school library is full of amazing books. I go there twice a week. After reading, I make notes to help me know a lot of information.



**A. Answer the following questions:**

---

1. What is this passage about?

.....

2. What does the underlined word "there" refer to?

.....

3. Do you think it is useful to go to school library? Why? Why not?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

---

4. The opposite of "amazing" is .....

- a. exciting                      b. boring                      c. dirty                      d. important

5. Basmala goes to school on foot because it is .....

- a. near                      b. new                      c. old                      d. far

6. Basmala goes to the library ..... a week.

- a. twice                      b. three times                      c. once                      d. ten times

**D - Vocabulary and structure (14 Marks)**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:(10 M)**

---

1. A ..... is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best.

- a. team                      b. charity                      c. competition                      d. coach

2. A/An ..... is something serious that you need to do something about.

- a. organisation                      b. emergency                      c. charity                      d. crescent

3. The ..... is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature.

- a. mountain                      b. earthquake                      c. countryside                      d. school

4. Mona's mother is a/an ..... She works for no money.

- a. coach                      b. volunteer                      c. butcher                      d. footballer

5. We are proud of our ..... handball team.

- a. world                      b. national                      c. ancient                      d. modern

6. In the past, people built ..... to watch their favourite sports.

- a. museums                      b. schools                      c. stadiums                      d. cinemas

7. Ali bought a new house with a large .....

- a. entrance                      b. wall                      c. ruin                      d. castle

8. You ..... look right and left before you cross the road.

- a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. can't                      d. shouldn't

9. Tarek ..... drink water from the river. It is not clean.

- a. don't have to                      b. have to                      c. has to                      d. mustn't

10. You ..... turn the music up too loud. You will harm our ears.

- a. must                      b. have to                      c. has to                      d. mustn't

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:(4 M)**

1. You mustn't ..... (to forget) your bags and books. (.....)
2. Students and teachers must ..... (are) polite to each other. (.....)
3. Ali didn't ..... (rode) a camel before. (.....)
4. He ..... (write) a letter yesterday. (.....)

### E - Writing (6 Marks)

**6 Write a paragraph of 90 words on:(6 M)**

Great job you like

[illegible]

## November Test "Model [2] Answers"

### A - Listening (4 Marks)

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:(4 M)

Tamer is a worker. He works in a factory. He always goes to his work at 6:00 a.m. After finishing his work, he goes shopping to buy all his family's needs. He always goes home at 3:00 p.m.

1. Tamer is a .....  
a. footballer                      b. pilot                      c. worker                      d. teacher
2. He works in a.....  
a. factory                      b. school                      c. bank                      d. market
3. He goes to his work at .....a.m.  
a. 7:30                      b. 4:45                      c. 6:00                      d. 9:15
4. Tamer always goes home at .....p.m.  
a. 3:00                      b. 3:15                      c. 3:30                      d. 3:45

### B - Language functions (5 Marks)

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue:(5 M)

- Tamer : Hi, Sami.  
Sami : Hi, Tamer.  
Tamer : Did you use to live in Cairo when you were young?  
Sami : No, I used to live in Giza.  
Tamer : Did you use to walk to school?  
Sami : Yes, I used to go to school on foot.  
Tamer : What hobby did you use to do?  
Sami : I used to read stories because I love reading. What about you?  
Tamer : I used to do sports  
Sami : Great. Doing sport is useful.

### C – Reading comprehension (6 Marks)

#### 3 Read the following then answer the questions:(6 M)

My name is Basmala. I go to a prep. School. It is near my house. I go there on foot. Our teachers are kind and they help us a lot. I was not good at English last year. But Mr Omar helped me to be better. This subject is very important. Our school library is full of amazing books. I go there twice a week. After reading, I make notes to help me know a lot of information.



**A. Answer the following questions:**

---

**1. What is this passage about?**

Basmala's routine.

**2. What does the underlined word "there" refer to?**

School library.

**3. Do you think it is useful to go to school library? Why? Why not?**

Yes. Because it is full of amazing books.

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

---

**5. The opposite of "amazing" is .....**

- a. exciting                      b. boring                      c. dirty                      d. important

**6. Basmala goes to school on foot because it is .....**

- a. near                      b. new                      c. old                      d. far

**7. Basmala goes to the library ..... a week.**

- a. twice                      b. three times                      c. once                      d. ten times

**D – Vocabulary and structure (14 Marks)**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:(10 M)**

---

**1. A ..... is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best.**

- a. team                      b. charity                      c. competition                      d. coach

**2. A/An ..... is something serious that you need to do something about.**

- a. organisation                      b. emergency                      c. charity                      d. crescent

**3. The ..... is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature.**

- a. mountain                      b. earthquake                      c. countryside                      d. school

**4. Mona's mother is a/an ..... She works for no money.**

- a. coach                      b. volunteer                      c. butcher                      d. footballer

**5. We are proud of our ..... handball team.**

- a. world                      b. national                      c. ancient                      d. modern

**6. In the past, people built ..... to watch their favourite sports.**

- a. museums                      b. schools                      c. stadiums                      d. cinemas

**7. Ali bought a new house with a large .....**

- a. entrance                      b. wall                      c. ruin                      d. castle

**8. You ..... look right and left before you cross the road.**

- a. must                      b. mustn't                      c. can't                      d. shouldn't

**9. Tarek ..... drink water from the river. It is not clean.**

- a. don't have to                      b. have to                      c. has to                      d. mustn't

**10 You ..... turn the music up too loud. You will harm our ears.**

- a. must                      b. have to                      c. has to                      d. mustn't

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:(4 M)**

---

1. You mustn't ..... (to forget) your bags and books. (forget)
2. Students and teachers must ..... (are) polite to each other. (be)
3. Ali didn't ..... (rode) a camel before. (ride)
4. He ..... (write) a letter yesterday. (wrote)

**E - Writing (6 Marks)**

**6 Write a paragraph of 90 words on:(6 M)**

---

**Great job you like**

Any topic related to the title and correct in terms of language, punctuation and spelling is acceptable.

Name : ..... Title : Model [3] Nov. Test  
Grade : ..... Degree : ..... / .....  
Time : ..... Signature : .....

---

### A - Listening (4 Marks)

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:(4 M)

1. What does Mona like to read? .....  
a. Novels                      b. Newspaper                      c. Magazines                      d. Letters
2. There is a ..... in her bedroom.  
a. radio                      b. swing                      c. desk                      d. chair
3. How old is Mona? - She is..... years old.  
a. 18                      b. 19                      c. 20                      d. 98
4. What does Mona like to play?  
a. Tennis                      b. Karate                      c. Football                      d. Handball

### B - Language functions (5 Marks)

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue:(5 M)

Ahmed : Hi, Salah. What is your favourite hobby?  
Sameh : Hi, Ahmed .....  
Ahmed : .....  
Sameh : My favourite actor is Adel Emam.  
Ahmed : Why do you like him?  
Sameh : .....  
Ahmed : Who is your favourite Actress?  
Sameh : .....  
Ahmed : Why do you like Mona Zaki?  
Sameh : .....

### C - Reading comprehension (6 Marks)

#### 3 Read the following then answer the questions:(6 M)

My name is Najat. I always get up at half past seven. I usually have my breakfast before I get dressed. I have breakfast with my family. My house far from school, so I go to school by bus. I always arrive before the bell rings. At break, I eat some sweets and play with my friends. I play with them in the playground. I come back home at two. My parents come from work at half past three. I help my mother. After lunch, I do my homework. I usually go to bed at half past eight.



**A. Answer the following questions:**

---

1. What is this passage about?

2. What does Najat do at break?

.....

3. What do you think of Najat? Why?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

---

4. Najat's house is not near her school. It means that her school is ..... from the house.

a. near                      b. far                      c. big                      d. opposite

5. Najat's parents come home at half past.....

a. one                      b. two                      c. three                      d. four

6. The underlined word "them" refers to .....

a. Najat's parents      b. Najat's friends      c. Najat's family      d. sandwiches

**D - Vocabulary and structure (14 Marks)**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:(10 Marks)**

---

1. You can only open this door in a/an ..... such as fire.

a. pleasure              b. charity              c. emergency              d. organisation

2. A ..... helps people who are poor. .

a. prison              b. charity              c. school              d. station

3. The ..... tells the parts of our body what to do.

a. heart              b. brain              c. ear              d. leg

4. Maher fell off his bike and has a big ..... on his arm.

a. infection              b. burn              c. cut              d. pump

5. Children must learn how to ..... politely all the time.

a. treat              b. behave              c. do              d. make

6. When I look out of the window, I have a beautiful .....

a. location              b. sight              c. view              d. review

7. This old castle ..... to the Romans time.

a. gets              b. walks              c. dates              d. debates

8. In 1990, he ..... the number one chess player in our city.

a. is becoming              b. becomes              c. became              d. become

9. Mona's grandmother ..... work in a hospital.

a. is used              b. used to              c. uses to              d. using to

10 They ..... money to a charity, but now they do.

a. didn't use to give      b. use to give      c. gives      d. used to give

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:(4 M)**

1. Sally ..... (buy) a car last year. (.....)
2. Hany ..... (don't) play tennis yesterday. (.....)
3. We must..... (to go) to the laboratory for our lesson. (.....)
4. We ..... (must) waste our time. (.....)

### E - Writing (6 Marks)

**6 Write a paragraph of 90 words on:(6 M)**

## An ancient Egyptian object

[illegible]

## November Test "Model [3] Answers"

### A - Listening (4 Marks)

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:(4 M)

Mona is 19 years old. She lives in a big house with her family. She has many hobbies. She likes listening to music. She has a radio in her bedroom. She also likes reading novels. Her favourite sport is handball.

1. What does Mona like to read? .....  
a. Novels                      b. Newspaper                      c. Magazines                      d. Letters
2. There is a .....in her bedroom.  
a. radio                      b. swing                      c. desk                      d. chair
3. How old is Mona?- She is.....years old.  
a. 18                      b. 19                      c. 20                      d. 98
4. What does Mona like to play? .....  
a. Tennis                      b. Karate                      c. Football                      d. Handball

### B - Language functions (5 M)

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue:(5 M)

- Ahmed : Hi, Salah. What is your favourite hobby?  
Sameh : Hi, Ahmed. My favourite hobby is watching movies.  
Ahmed : Who is your favourite actor?  
Sameh : My favourite actor is Adel Emam.  
Ahmed : Why do you like him?  
Sameh : Because he makes good movies.  
Ahmed : Who is your favourite Actress?  
Sameh : Mona Zaki.  
Ahmed : Why do you like Mona Zaki?  
Sameh : Because she makes good movies.

### C - Reading comprehension (6 Marks)

#### 3 Read the following then answer the questions:(6 M)

My name is Najat. I always get up at half past seven. I usually have my breakfast before I get dressed. I have breakfast with my family. My house far from school, so I go to school by bus. I always arrive before the bell rings. At break, I eat some sweets and play with my friends. I play with them in the playground. I come back home at two. My parents come from work at half past three. I help my mother. After lunch, I do my homework. I usually go to bed at half past eight.



**A. Answer the following questions:**

**1. What is this passage about?**

Najat's routine.

**2. What does Najat do at break?**

She eats some sweets and play with her friends.

**3. What do you think of Najat? Why?**

She is a good girl because she helps her mother.

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

**4. Najat's house is not near her school. It means that her school is ..... from the house.**

a. near                      b. far                      c. big                      d. opposite

**5. Najat's parents come home at half past.....**

a. one                      b. two                      c. three                      d. four

**6. The underlined word "them" refers to .....**

a. Najat's parents      b. Najat's friends      c. Najat's family      d. sandwiches

**D - Vocabulary and structure (14 Marks)**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:(10 M)**

**1. You can only open this door in a/an ..... such as fire.**

a. pleasure                      b. charity                      c. emergency                      d. organisation

**2. A ..... helps people who are poor. .**

a. prison                      b. charity                      c. school                      d. station

**3. The ..... tells the parts of our body what to do.**

a. heart                      b. brain                      c. ear                      d. leg

**4. Maher fell of his bike and has a big ..... on his arm.**

a. infection                      b. burn                      c. cut                      d. pump

**5. Children must learn how to ..... politely all the time.**

a. treat                      b. behave                      c. do                      d. make

**6. When I look out of the window, I have a beautiful .....**

a. location                      b. sight                      c. view                      d. review

**7. This old castle ..... to the Romans time.**

a. gets                      b. walks                      c. dates                      d. debates

**8. In 1990, he ..... the number one chess player in our city.**

a. is becoming                      b. becomes                      c. became                      d. become

**9. Mona's grandmother ..... work in a hospital.**

a. is used                      b. used to                      c. uses to                      d. using to

**10 They ..... money to a charity, but now they do.**

a. didn't use to give      b. use to give      c. gives      d. used to give

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:(4 M)**

---

1. Sally ..... (buy) a car last year. (bought)
2. Hany ..... (don't) play tennis yesterday. (didn't)
3. We must..... (to go) to the laboratory for our lesson. (go)
4. We ..... (must) waste our time. (mustn't)

**E - Writing (6 Marks)**

**6 Write a paragraph of 90 words on:(6 M)**

---

**An ancient Egyptian object**

Any topic related to the title and correct in terms of language, punctuation and spelling is acceptable.

١ - نستخدم قاعدة (used to) للتعبير عن عادات في الماضي او حالات لم تعد موجود الان وشكل الجملة يكون كالآتي

مصدر + used to + فاعل

He **used to** smoke.

They **used to** visit the zoo.

٢ - في حاله **النفي** يكون الشكل كالآتي

مصدر + didn't use to + فاعل

He **didn't use to** help the poor.

She **didn't use to** play tennis.

٣ - في حاله **السؤال** بمعنى (هل) يكون الشكل كالآتي

Did + use to + فاعل + مصدر.....?

**Did they use to** play well?

Yes, they did.

No, they didn't.

٤ - مع السؤال الذي يبدأ **بأداة استفهام** يكون الشكل كالآتي

مصدر.....? + use to + فاعل + did + أداة استفهام

1. **What games did you use to** play?

I **used to** play football.

2. **How did he use to** go to school?

He **used to** go by car.



1. He used to be thin. (**but now** he isn't thin / but now he is fat)
2. He used to smoke (**but now** he doesn't smoke).
3. They used to live in India (**but now** they don't).

## ٢ - للتعبير عن عادة في المضارع نستخدم الشكل الاتي

فاعل + am / is / are + used to + V + ing

He **is used to studying** hard.  
They **are used to arriving** early.

## ٣ - الشكل الاتي معناه ان الشيء "يُستخدم" وتبدأ الجملة بمفعول

مصدر + is / are + used to + الشيء

الشيء + is / are + used for + v + ing

A knife **is used to cut** things.  
A knife **is used for cutting** things.

## Exercises on grammar

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. She used to.....long hair.

a. have

b. having

c. has

d. had

2. He didn't.....to arrive late.

a. used

b. use

c. uses

d. using

3. She is used to.....the poor.

a. help

b. helps

c. helped

d. helping

4. What did he use to.....?

- a. did                                      b. does                                      c. doing                                      d. do

5. A knife is used.....cutting meat.

- a. to    b. for    c. by    d. off

6. ....he use to watch TV? - Yes, he did.

- a. Was    b. Is    c. Does    d. Did

7. He used to.....clever when he was young.

- a. be    b. being    c. do    d. doing

8. He used to..... clever things when he was young.

- a. be    b. being    c. do    d. doing

9. I didn't ..... to want to have a nice house.

- a. used    b. uses    c. using    d. use

10. Did he use to ..... French?

- a. study    b. studied    c. studying    d. studies

11. He used to smoke ,but now he ..... smoke.

- a. doesn't    b. don't    c. isn't    d. wasn't

12. He used to be lazy , but now he.....

- a. is    b. isn't    c. don't    d. doesn't

13. Are your children used to ..... a lot?

- a. walk    b. walks    c. walked    d. walking

14. She used to.....mistakes.

- a. make    b. makes    c. made    d. making

15. Did you.....to stay up late?

- a. used    b. uses    c. using    d. use

2. Read and correct the underlined words

1. I used to do lazy.

2. He use to smoke badly.

3. They used to playing football.

4. He used to have long hair, but now he isn't.

5. She is used to get up early.

6. Did he used to study hard?

7. What does he use to eat?

8. She uses to cook well.

9. He used to be lazy, but now he wasn't.

10. A pen is used to writing.



١ - الماضي يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل أي المصدر مضاف ايه (d/ed/ied) ويوجد أفعال شاذة

1. He **watched** TV **yesterday**.
2. They **studied** English **last week**.
3. She **arrived** late **yesterday**.
4. He **wrote** the letter two hours **ago**.

٢ - يتم نفي الماضي البسيط باستخدام (didn't + inf) المصدر بدون اضافات

1. He **visited** Aswan last year.  
He **didn't visit** Aswan last year.
2. They **sent** the letter to Ali.  
They **didn't send** the letter to Ali.

معلومة هامة

ماضي بسيط = never + مصدر + didn't

He **didn't go** to the cinema.  
= He **never went** to the cinema.

٣ - يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية ليدل على شيء حدث في الماضي

سنة ماضية + ago – last – yesterday – once – in the past – in +  
When I was young ...

1. He **moved** to a new house last week.
2. He **was** born in 2010.
3. When I was young, I **visited** Aswan.

لاحظ الجملة الآتية جيدا

When I was in Alexandria, I **always swam** in the sea.  
When he was young, he **sometimes played** football.



٣ - في حالة تكوين السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد بمعنى (هل) وتكون الأجوبة بـ (Yes,... / No,.....) يكون الشكل كالاتي

**Did + مصدر + فاعل + .....?**

1. **Did** he **visit** the museum yesterday?

Yes, he did. / No, he didn't.

Yes, he **visited** the museum yesterday.

No, he **didn't visit** the museum yesterday.

2. **Did** she **write** her homework?

Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.

Yes, she **wrote** her homework.

No, she **didn't write** her homework.

٤ - في حالة السؤال الذي يبدأ بأداة استفهام

**.....? مصدر + فاعل + did + أداة استفهام**

1. Where **did** you **live**?

I **lived** in Aswan.

2. How **did** they **go** to school?

They **went** to school on foot.

3. Why **was** he sad?

He **was** sad because he **lost** his mobile.

### Exercise on Grammar

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. I .....to the museum last month.

a. go                                      b. will go                                      c. goes                                      d. went

2. When.....Dina's birthday?

a. do                                      b. did                                      c. was                                      d. does

3. They.....TV an hour ago.

a. watched                                      b. watch                                      c. are watching                                      d. will watch

4. I went.....yesterday.

a. swim                                      b. swam                                      c. swims                                      d. swimming

5. What did Adam.....when he arrived?

a. did                                      b. doing                                      c. does                                      d. do

6. How did you .....when you saw the lion yesterday?  
 a. feel                                      b. felt                                      c. feels                                      d. feeling
7. I wrote the e-mail.....  
 a. now                                      b. last week                                      c. tomorrow                                      d. next
8. He .....born in 2010.  
 a. was                                      b. are                                      c. did                                      d. do
9. When I was young, I always.....football.  
 a. play                                      b. plays                                      c. playing                                      d. played
10. ....ready for the exam last week?  
 a. Did                                      b. Were                                      c. Do                                      d. Are
11. How did you go to school? – I .....by car.  
 a. go                                      b. going                                      c. will go                                      d. went
12. No, he didn't.....Aswan last year.  
 a. visit                                      b. visited                                      c. go                                      d. went
13. When did you have your last math lesson? – We .....it at 2 o'clock.  
 a. had                                      b. have                                      c. will have                                      d. has
14. The ship sank because there..... a terrible storm.  
 a. are                                      b. is                                      c. was                                      d. were
15. How.....your weekend?  
 a. did                                      b. does                                      c. was                                      d. do

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words

1. I play football yesterday.
2. Where did they lived?
3. They go to school on foot yesterday.
4. He didn't helped me with my homework.
5. I ride on the big wheel two hours ago.
6. He born in 2010. Now he is ten years old.
7. We visit the museum 4 weeks ago.
8. In October 2019, I will visit Hurghada.
9. I have breakfast with them 15 minutes ago.
10. Yesterday, we will go bowling.
11. Did he wrote the e-mail a week ago?
12. I listen to music then went out.
13. When he was young, he sometimes watches TV.



## past continuous

١١ - يتكون الماضي المستمر كالآتي

فاعل + was / were + V + ing

I	He	She	It	اسم مفرد	was + V + ing
We	You	They		اسم جمع	were + V + ing

I **was watching** TV.  
They **were reading** the story.

٢ - في حالة النفي نضع (not) بعد (was / were)

She **wasn't** eating.  
We **weren't** swimming.

٣ - السؤال الذي يبدأ **بفعل مساعد** يكون معناه هل وتكون الإجابة بـ **Yes, or No,**

**Was / Were + فاعل + V + ing.....?**

**Was** she cooking?  
**Yes,** she was.  
**No,** she wasn't.

**Were** they playing?  
**Yes,** they were.  
**No,** they weren't.

**Were** you sleeping?  
**Yes,** I was.  
**No,** I wasn't.

٤ - أما السؤال الذي يبدأ **بأداة استفهام** يكون الشكل كالآتي

**Was / Were + فاعل + V + ing.....? أداة استفهام**

1. **Where** was he waiting?  
He **was waiting** in the club.  
2. **What** were they wearing?  
They **were wearing** shirts.





## ٥ - استخدامات الماضي المستمر

١ - يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي

At 7 o'clock yesterday, he **was watching** the film.

٢ - يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا وقطعه حدث اخر الحدث المستمر يكون ماضي مستمر والذي قطعه يكون ماضي بسيط وذلك مع الروابط مثل

when / while / as / just as

**When** he arrived, they were eating.

**While**she was cooking, Ali came.

**When**she was cooking, Ali arrived.

معلومة هامة جدا (١)

يمكن أن يأتي الحدثان ماضي مستمر اذا لم يقطر احدهما الاخر اي كانا مستمران في نفس الوقت

**While**she **was cooking**, her sister **was washing** the dishes.

**When**he **was eating**, he **was watching** TV.

معلومة هامة (٢)

اذا لم يأتي فاعل بعد (while) نستخدم (v+ing) فقط

**While**I **was studying**, I slept.

**While**studying, I slept.

معلومة هامة (٣)

افعال الشعور والجواسد والادراك والتذكر والعاطفة والتملك لا تستخدم في الاستمرار

like  
love

believe  
remember

own  
understand

know  
want

I **was owning** a car. (X)

I **owned** a car (✓)

## Exercise on Grammar

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. My mobile ran while I .....my homework.

- a. do                      b. does                      c. did                      d. was doing

2. He was driving to work when the accident.....

- a. happen                      b. happened                      c. happens                      d. will happen

3. While.....my homework, I slept.

- a. was doing                      b. were doing                      c. did                      d. doing

4. What were you.....yesterday morning?

- a. do                      b. did                      c. doing                      d. was doing

5. Were you sleeping when the clock.....off?

- a. go                      b. goes                      c. going                      d. went

6. Was it.....when you left school?

- a. rain                      b. rains                      c. rained                      d. raining

7. While we.....the math test, the fire alarm went off.

- a. doing                      b. was doing                      c. did                      d. were doing

8. While she was studying, her brother.....TV.

- a. watched                      b. was watching                      c. watch                      d. watches

9. She wasn't eating when her father.....

- a. call                      b. calls                      c. calling                      d. called

10. They.....Aswan last week.

- a. visit                      b. visits                      c. will visit                      d. visited

11. ....he arrived, they were having lunch.

- a. While                      b. When                      c. During                      d. On

12. When she visited her friend, she was.....

- a. swim                      b. swam                      c. swims                      d. swimming



13. As he was carrying the vase, he -----it on the floor.

- a. drops                      b. dropped                      c. had dropped                      d. was dropping

14. My sister-----the room while I was making tea.

- a. cleaned                      b. was cleaning                      c. is cleaning                      d. cleans

15. ....my holiday, I visited many places .

- a. When                      b. While                      c. During                      d. Where

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words

1. While he took a bath, his friend arrived.

2. When he was work in the kitchen, he dropped the glass of water.

3. While he was sleeping, his sister watch TV.

4. What was you doing when the light went out?

5. Was it rain when you left school?

6. My mobile ring while I was doing my homework.

7. He was walking when he see the accident.

8. While was sleeping, I had a bad dream.

9. Where were you have lunch?

10. I was study hard for the exam.





### Unit 3 Great jobs

surgeon	جراح	brain	المخ	charity	مؤسسة خيرية
scientist	عالم	heart	القلب	The countryside	الريف
Charity worker	فاعل خيري	lungs	الرئتين	emergency	حالة طوارئ
Sports coach	مدرب رياضي	Breathe	يتنفس	Natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية
win	يفوز	pump	يضخ/ مضخة	burns	حروق
handball	كرة يد	blood	دم	organisation	منظمة
junior	مبتدئ/ فاشئ	earthquake	الزلازل	patient	مريض
senior	كبير سنا/ راشد	heroic	بطولي	Stop infection	يمنع العدوى
competition	منافسة	society	مجتمع	rubbish collectors	عمال جمع القمامة
hero	بطل	research	يجري بحث	Street cleaners	عمال نظافة الشوارع
treatment	علاج	serious	جاد/ خطر	manager	مدير
medicine	طب/ دواء	cut	جرح/ يجرح/	scared	مرعوب
score	يسجل/ يحرز	Do experiments	يجري تجارب علمية	Fire fighter	رجل الاطفاء
volunteer	متطوع	Sew cuts	يخيط الجروح	Police officer	ضابط شرطة
furniture	اثاث	Do things	يفعل اشياء	Proud of	فخور ب
jewellery	مجوهرات	agree	يوافق	Ancient Egyptians	القدماء المصريين

#### 2- Complete the following dialogue:

1-Enas : Hello, Huda. Can ! ask you some questions?

Huda : Hi, Enas. Sure.

Enas : Where (1).....your parents live when they were young?

Huda : They (2).....in Tanta.  
Enas : What did your grandfather do?  
Huda : He (3).....a farmer.  
Enas : Really? (4).....he grow fruits?  
Huda : Yes, of course.  
Enas : What about your grandmother?  
Huda : She (5).....work. She was a housewife.

2-A reporter makes a report about footballers.

Reporter : Hello (1)..... Is your name?  
Footballer : Nasser hany  
Reporter : What did you (2) .....to do 20 years ago?  
Footballer : I used to (3).....football  
Reporter : (4).....you earn much money from it?  
Footballer : No, I didn't. we played because we loved playing for our country.  
Reporter : I wish you more success.  
footballer : (5).....

3-Mazin : Hello, Hany.

Hany : Hello, Mazin.  
Mazin : Did you (1).....to live in Cairo when you were young?  
Hany : (2).....I used to live in Giza.  
Mazin : Did you use to (3).....to school?  
Hany : Yes. I used to go to school on foot.  
Mazin : What hobby (4).....you use to do?  
Hany : I used to read stories. What about you?  
Mazin : I used to (5).....  
Hany : Great

4-Omar : I think rubbish collectors can be heroes.

Ali : What do you(1)..... ?  
Omar : I(2)..... , we need rubbish collectors.2  
Ali : Sorry, I don't (3).....  
Omar : I mean they do something very useful. The city would be terrible without them!  
Ali : That's(4)..... . What about street cleaners?  
Omar : I'm not (5)..... . What do you mean?  
Ali : I mean, street cleaners are also important.  
Omar : Yes, that's true! They help to keep our cities clean.  
Ali : I agree!

5-Samy : Do you know that the Egyptian football team won the Africa Cup of Nations?

Aya : That's great, but when (1)..... they win it?  
Samy : The last time was (2)..... 2010.  
Aya : Oh, no! That was many years ago.  
Samy : Yes, but they (3)..... the cup three times one after the other.  
Aya : I don't understand you. (4)..... do you mean?  
Samy : I mean that Egypt won the cup in 2006, 2008 and 2010.  
Aya : Wow! That was a great achievement!

Samy : You are right.

Aya : I'm (5)..... of the Egyptian football team.

6-Tourist : Is Elephantine Island a good place for fish?

Tarek : Do you (1).....you want to go fishing?

Tourist :Yes. That's (2).....I like fishing.

Tarek : Yes. It is a popular place for people who like fishing. Have you thought about going to the desert?

Tourist :{3).....do you mean?

Tarek : Well, you can go to the White Desert. It's very exciting.

Tourist : Did you (4).....go there?

Tarek : Yes. I used to go to Farafra. It's a place in the White Desert.

Tourist : I (5).....what you mean

7.Dalia : Can I ask you some questions?

Eman : Sure.

Dalia : What do (1).....do to our body?

Eman : Lungs take in air and help us to breathe.

Dalia : Can smokers(2).....well?

Eman : Of course not.

Dalia : What (3).....the brain do?

Eman : It tells the parts of our (4) .....what to do.

Dalia : What does the heart do?

Eman : It (5).....blood around the body.

**3-Read the following , then answer the questions :**

A long time ago, there was a young boy who used to come and play around a huge apple tree every day. He climbed the tree, ate the apples and took a nap under the shadow. He loved the tree and the tree loved to play with him. The boy got older and didn't play around it every day.

Every time, when he came back, he was sad and didn't want to play with the tree. However, the tree was ready to do anything to make him happy. She gave him all the apples to sell them and buy toys. Then, she told him to cut her branches to build a house and at last, he took her trunk to build a boat and go sailing. Finally, he came back after many years but she told him that she had nothing left except her root. The man told her that he only wanted a place to rest. The man sat down and the tree was very happy.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What did the boy use to do when he was young?

2. Why did the tree give the boy all the apples?

3. Do you think trees are useful? Why?

**B) Choose the correct answer:**

4. The tree gave the boy her ..... to build a boat.

a. apples      b. branches      c. trunk      d. root

5. The main idea of the passage is to be .....

a. careless      b. helpful      c. unkind      d. sad



6.the underlined pronoun " her " refers to...

- a. girl                      b. place                      c. tree                      d. man

2-My name is Sandy. I used to work in a bank, but now I work as a secretary in a company. I left the bank and joined the company seven years ago. I enjoy working here and I have made lots of friends. I met my husband in this company and we got married last year. Our manager, Mr Medhat, is a very nice man. He gave us three weeks off and he bought us a very nice wedding gift. When I am not working, I love spending time in my garden. I grow plants and vegetables. When I was a little girl, I wanted to be a gardener. I always helped my parents in the garden. My husband likes gardening, too. We went to the garden centre last weekend and bought some new plants. My husband planted a new apple tree and some roses in the garden. I watered the tomato plants and the strawberries.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1 Why is Mr Medhat a kind man?.....  
2. Where does Sandy's husband work?.....  
3 What does the underlined word "gift" mean?.....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4.Sandy used to help her parents in the.....  
a) park                      b) garden                      c) farm                      d) barn  
5. Sandy wanted to.....when she was young.  
a) get married      b) work in a bank      c) be a gardener d) plant apple trees  
6. ....planted the apple tree.  
a) The husband                      b) Sandy                      c) The manager                      d) None of them

3-One day, Mr Adel took his wife, Mrs. Amira and his children to the city park in order to have a picnic. They drove to the park early in the morning and arrived there at about 10 a.m. Mr Adel and his wife sat under a tree. They ate, drank and read newspapers. Their children ran and jumped on the grass. Amira decided to take some photos of them. While she was talking her camera out of her bag, she heard a cry. An old lady was running after a thief who took her mobile phone and started to run away. Amira quickly took three photos of him. When the police arrived, she showed them the photos. A few hours later, the police caught the thief. They gave the lady her old phone and thanked Amira.

**a. Answer the following questions:**

1. Where did Mr Adel and his family go on a picnic?.....  
2. How did Mrs Amira help the lady?.....  
3. What does the underlined word "them" refer to?.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d:**

4. Mr Adel and his family went to the park by .....  
a. train                      b. metro                      c. car                      d. plane  
5. Amira was a ..... woman.  
a. lazy                      b. clever                      c. stupid                      d. helpless  
6.the thief took .....from the old lady.  
a. photos                      b. camera                      c. phone                      d. newspaper

4-Omar and Salma went to Greece on holiday. They stayed in a nice, big hotel. In the mornings, they had breakfast at the hotel and in the evenings, they ate dinner at

restaurants. One night, they went to a famous restaurant and they sat outside because it was lovely warm weather. They ordered fish with salad and chips. The waiter served it. They saw a big sign. It said, 'Don't feed the cats.' Soon, they saw a beautiful cat. It came up to their table. It sat beside Salma.

Salma cut a piece of fish and gave it to the cat. It ate the fish. The waiter was not happy! The cat did not wait for another piece. It jumped on the table, took the fish and quickly jumped back down. At that moment, the waiter came back out. He saw the cat with the fish. He looked at Salma, but he didn't say a thing. His look said it all.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Where did Omar and Salma go on holiday?.....
- 2- Why did they sit outside the famous restaurant?.....
- 3- Do you think the waiter was angry? Why? .....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 3- The waiter gave Salma a bad  
a meal                      b fish                      c cat                      d look
- 4- The restaurant was..... to put the sign.  
a bad                      b right                      c wrong                      d rude
- 5- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the  
a fish                      b table                      c cat                      d piece

**4-choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

1. The Egyptian handball team won an important.....in2020. **SB**  
a) development                      b) experiment                      c) competition                      d) completion
2. A.....knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill. **WB**  
a) sports coach                      b) surgeon                      c) police officer                      d) hero
- 3- A/An .....does experiments to study and find out about how things work. **WB**  
a.event                      b.scientist                      c.worker                      d.hero
- 4- A..... is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something **WB**  
a..team                      b.charity                      c.coach                      d.competition
- 5- A/An..... is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about.**WB**  
a. organisation                      b. emergency                      c. charity                      d. crescent
- 6- The..... is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature. **WB**  
a.mountain                      b.earthquake                      c.countryside                      d.crescent
- 7- Mona's mother is a/an ..... at the hospital; they don't pay her for her work. **WB**  
a.coach                      b. volunteer                      c.patient                      d.adult
- 8- You can only open this door in a/an..... , such as a fire. **WB**  
a pleasure                      b charity                      c emergency                      d organisation
- 9- A ..... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home. **SB**  
a.prison                      b.charity                      c.museum                      d.theater
- 10- The..... tells the parts of our body what to do. **SB**  
a.heart                      b.stomach                      c.ey e                      d.brain
- 11-Lina's cousin in hospital with an eye..... **WB**  
a. infected                      b.infect                      c.infection                      d. infectious
- 12-Adam fell off his bike and has a big.....on his arm. **WB**  
a.burn                      b.infection                      c.cut                      d.pump
- 13- The lungs take in air and help us to ..... **WB**  
a.breeze                      b.breath                      c.freeze                      d.breathe
- 14- A teaches people how to play or improve a sport. **WB**  
a sports coach                      b scientist                      c teacher                      d professor
- 15- I always give money to a/an..... that helps poor children. **WB**  
a medicine                      b library                      c history                      d charity
- 16- A..... helps people or animals that need help. **WB**

- a.charity worker      b.sports coach      c.nuclear scientist      d.fruit seller
- 17- When you are older, do you want to live in the city or the..... ? **WB**  
a.side      b.earth      c.countryside      d.continent
- 18.My sister has passed all her exams with good marks, and we are very.....of her. **WB**  
a.worried      b. pleased      c.proud      d. crowded
- 19- The heart ..... blood around the body. **WB**  
a.takes in      b.drinks      c.pumps      d.plants
20. My brother is only 10 years. He wants to join the.....team.  
a)small      b) old      c) junior      d) senior
21. My grandfather is my.....He helped many people in his village and built a school.  
a) thief      b) hero      c) player      d) driver
- 22Dr. Magdy Yacoub is a world famous heart.....  
a) worker      b) scientist      c) waiter      d) surgeon
- 23-This great charity helps children..... heart problems.  
a) with      b) by      c)in      d) on
24. A player should practise more to.....his skills in a sport.  
a) lose      b) improve      c) climb      d) make
25. Scientists do many experiments to find.....for many illnesses.  
a) treatments      b) developments      c) moments      d) monuments
26. When I was little, a thief. ....me and a police officer saved me and arrested him.  
a) attacked      b) attracted      c) won      d) earned
- 27Our team won the match.....Tunisia.  
a) away      b) across      c) again      d) against
28. My father died from..... is a dangerous disease.  
a) cancer      b) flu      c) kidney      d) heart
29. In handball, players score by.....the ball into a goal.  
a) touching      b) throwing      c) heading      d) saving
- 30.Mohamed Salah plays.....Liverpool team in England.  
a) in      b) on      c) to      d) for
31. Working in a group is called.....  
a) homework      b) manual work      c) teamwork      d) housework
- 32.Scientists do experiments to..... how things work.  
a) find out      b) improve      c) practise      d) touch
33. Everybody works hard to be.....  
a) success      b) successful      c) succeed      d) successfully
34. He had a terrible accident and.....a leg.  
a) won      b) lost      c) missed      d) threw
- 35They started a.....to help people from poor families with the disease.  
a) foundation      b) solution      c) pollution      d) introduction
- 36- Omar Samra became the first Egyptian ..... Mount Everest  
a-climbed      b-climb      c-climbing      d-to climb
- 37- We always..... experiments at the school lab every Monday.  
a.make      b.do      c.look      d.fly
- 38-Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work ..... a surgeon for a long time ago.  
a.alike      b.as      c.like      d.such
- 39- ..... is a sport with seven players in a team.  
a.Tennis      b.Boxing      c.Snorkelling      d.Handball
- 40- Huda went to a surgeon to..... the cut in her hand.  
a.cook      b.break      c.sew      d.plant
- 41- The little child ..... off his bike and broke his leg.  
a.felt      b.filled      c.failed      d.fell
- 42-Women usually wear..... which is made of gold.  
a.Furniture      b.Jewellery      c. Information      d.clothes
- 43.My house is very big. It has a lot of.....



- a) medicine      b) experience      c) information      d) furniture
- 44- She helped to look..... poor children in Egypt from 1920 to 1969.  
a.for      b.in      c. from      d.after
45. I always feel.....of dark places.  
a) happy      b) scared      c) hungry      d) busy
- 46.Our streets are clean because.....don't leave any paper there.  
a) rubbish collectors      b) volunteers      c) shop workers      d) sellers
- 47 My neighbour, Mr Said, is.....He saved a little girl from fire.  
a) safe      b) dangerous      c) serious      d) brave
- 48 My mother did some.....work that made me proud of her.  
a) dangerous      b) boring      c) heroic      d) scary
- 49 I went to the museum and saw many.....of Ancient Egyptians there.  
a) statues      b) emails      c) selfies      d) villas
50. My father is the most important doctor at his hospital. He is the.....  
a) worker      b) manager      c) cleaner      d) waiter
- 51- Street..... help to keep our cities clean.  
a.builders      b.makers      c.walkers      d.cleaners
- 52 My father is the person who.....for our needs.  
a) does      b) makes      c) buys      d) Pays
53. A/An.....is the person who helps people when there is fire.  
a) firefighter      b) engineer      c) surgeon      d) waiter
- 54.Milk is useful.....children.  
a.for      b.in      c. from      d.after
- 55- What's the..... you're leaving your new job, Sameh?  
a.season      b.pity      c.reason      d.question
- 56- My father works as a/an..... in a big factory.  
a.manager      b.teacher      c.tour guide      d.farmer
- 57- Good people work ..... to achieve their goals.  
a.hardly      b.difficult      c.easily      d.hard
58. We should..... our country clean.  
a)keep      b)save      c) live      d) store
- 59- my friend samy was born..... a rich family.  
a) at      b)in      c) on      d)into
- 60- Would you like to see the..... match in the stadium? I have tickets.  
a final      b fun      c total      d signal

## grammar



## زمن الماضي البسيط The past simple tense

### التكوين 1-Form

- يتكون الماضي البسيط من ( التصريف الثاني للفعل ) بإضافة ed أو ied للفعل إذا كان **فعل عادي** )  
منتظم ( مثل Play – played / help – helped  
أما إذا كان **فعل شاذ** ( غير منتظم ) يُحفظ مثل see - saw / go - went / have – had.

### الاستخدام 2-Usage

نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن:  
١. حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي.

E.g. E.g. I **played** football yesterday. I **visited** my aunt a week ago.  
I was very tired this morning.

٢. عادة في الماضي (غالباً مع كلمة "used to" والتي معناها "اعتاد أن").

E.g. When I was in Paris, I **used to play(play)** tennis.

### الكلمات الدالة 3-Key words

Yesterday امس / (مدة زمنية) ago منذ / last + مدة زمنية الماضي / in + سنة ماضية (in 2009)  
 ذات مرة once / عندما كنت صغير When I was young / في الماضي in the past

مصدر الفعل + did not (didn't) + V.(inf)

### ٤. النفي Negative

في حالة النفي نستخدم (المصدر + didn't)

→ I **didn't** play football yesterday. → he **didn't** go to school last week.

لاحظ : هناك اشكال اخرى للافعال في زمن الماضي التي لا يمكن تحول الى النفي باستخدام **didn't** مثل:

was → wasn't / were → weren't / could → couldn't

→ Ali **wasn't** at the cinema last week. → They **weren't** at school yesterday.

→ When I was young, I **couldn't** ride a bike.

### ٥. السؤال Question

مصدر الفعل + inf..... + فاعل + Did

Yes / No تتبع الاتي : عند تكوين السؤال ب

→ Did you watch TV last night? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

Were / Was + فاعل + (صفة او اسم او حرف جر + مكان) ؟

→ Were you at the cinema last week? Yes, I was / No wasn't

عند تكوين السؤال ب اداة استفهام

مصدر الفعل + inf..... + فاعل + did + اداة الاستفهام

→ What time did you go to bed? Why did he buy that shirt?

→ where did you go yesterday? I went to the club

Were / Was + فاعل + (صفة او اسم او حرف جر + مكان) + اداة استفهام

→ How was your birthday? Where was Samy's old house?

### اعتاد ان Used to + inf

١- في الاثبات نستخدم used to (لتعبر عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي ولم تعد تحدث الآن)

فاعل + used to + inf

- I **used to play** football when I was young. - He **used to be** a driver, but now he isn't.

- I **used to smoke** a packet a day

He used to live in the countryside.

فاعل + Didn't use to + inf

٢- في النفي نستخدم

- He **didn't use to** play football when he was young.

I **didn't use to** know much about my family history.

Did + فاعل + use to + inf ?

٣- في حالة السؤال بمعنى هل نستخدم

- **Did she use to** live in Cairo? **yes, she did.** / **No, she didn't**

**Did you use to** get up early? **yes, I did** / **No, I didn't**

What sport did you use to play?

I used to play football.

ملاحظات

لاحظ الاتي

1. He used to be thin. (but now he isn't thin / but now he is fat)

2. He used to smoke (but now he doesn't smoke).

(am / is / are) / (get) used to (v + ing) معتاد على

صفة ( تعبر عن عادة تحدث في الحاضر)

I'm used to playing football . = I usually play football.

(be) used to + inf = (be) used for + ( v+ing )

فعل أساسي في جملة مبنية للمجهول ومعناه يستخدم لكي

- Wood is used to make furniture.

=

- Wood is used for making furniture.

1. In 2016, a shark.....Omar and he lost a leg. **WB**

a) is attacking      b) attacking      c) attacked      d) attacks

9- There..... a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three. **WB**

a weren't      b didn't      c isn't      d didn't use to be

3.- Egypt's football team..... the Africa Cup of Nations in 2010. **WB**

a win      b won      c to win      d winning

4- He started playing chess when he was very little and he..... always very good at it. **WB**

a.does      b was      c has      d were

5.in 1990, He .....the number one chess player in our city. **WB**

a) is becoming      b) becomes      c) became      d)become

6. Yasser's grandmother..... work in a hospital. **WB**

a. used to      b. is used      c. uses to      d. using to

7. Dina ..... money to a charity, but now she does. **SB**

a.didn't use to give      b.gave      c.doesn't give      d.used to give

8. Did Hossam Hassan ..... captain of the Egyptian Football team? **SB**

a.uses to be      b.was      c.be      d.use to be

9- My grandfather ..... football when he was young, but he can't walk now. **WB**

a play      b used to play      c use to play      d plays

10- When she was a child, Yasser's Mum .....play the piano every day. **SB**

a used to      b was used to      c was using to      d use to

11- Where..... live before you moved to Alexandria? **WB**

a.are you      b.do you      c.you used to      d.did you use to

12. They.....in the countryside, but now they live in the city.

a) used to living      b) use to live      c) used to live      d) using to live

13 .....play computer games when you were younger?

a) Did you used      b) Does he use to      c) Did you use to      d) Did you use

14..I went to Hurghada with my family a.....

a) tomorrow      b) next week      c) last week      d) week ago

15. How.....your weekend?

a. did      b. does      c. was      d. do

16-.....you go to the museum last week?

a-Are      b-were      c-Did      d-do

17-Where.....you yesterday?

a-did      b-do      c-are      d-were

18-Where did you live when you ..... a child?



- a-were                      b-are                      c-was                      d-is
- 19-Last summer, my family ..... a fantastic holiday in Morocco.  
a. have                      b. had                      c. has                      d. are having
- 20-Salah al-Din al-Ayouby-----the citadel to protect Cairo.  
a- built                      b- build                      c - builds                      d- building
- 21-Where.....you yesterday?  
a-did                      b-do                      c-are                      d-were
- 22-.....your friends ready for the exam last week?  
a-was                      b-did                      c-were                      d-do
23. Mona..... to school yesterday because she was ill.  
a. not come                      b. doesn't come                      c. don't come                      d. didn't come
- 24-Hany .....at school last Monday.  
a-didn't                      b-doesn't                      c-wasn't                      d.hasn't
- 25 My family..... delicious food last week.  
a.ate                      b.eat                      c.eats                      d.eating
- 26-I ..... with a dolphin in Hurghada last summer.  
a-swim                      b-swam                      c-swim                      d-swimming
- 27- My brother bought his house two years.....  
a.ago                      b.last                      c.once                      d.since
28. When you were ten, ..... you use to live in a different house?  
a. did                      b. does                      c. doing                      d. do
29. He used to.....clever when he was young.  
a. be                      b. being                      c. do                      d. doing
30. He used to..... clever things when he was young.  
a. be                      b. being                      c. do                      d. doing
31. Did your children use to ..... a lot?  
a. walk                      b. walks                      c. walked                      d. walking
32. He used to smoke ,but now he ..... smoke.  
a. doesn't                      b. don't                      c. isn't                      d. wasn't
33. He used to be lazy , but now he.....  
a. is                      b. isn't                      c. don't                      d. doesn't
- 34- Hany..... doing his homework an hour ago.  
a starts                      b started                      c start                      d starting
- 35- He .....Aunt Reem when he was 20 and they got married in 1983.  
a met                      b was meeting                      c meets                      d will meet
- 36- My father .....us to school as the school bus didn't come.  
a drives                      b drove                      c drive                      d driving

### 5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- 1- I..... (eat) fish last week.
- 2- who did you..... (seeing) last Monday?
- 3- she didn't..... (rode) a camel before.
- 4-We..... (write) in English yesterday.
- 5-My uncle..... (buy) his house last summer.
- 6-Hany..... (don't) play tennis yesterday.
- 7-Hala .....(be) ill last week.
8. I ..... (sleep) in a tent last night
9. We..... (go) into the cave last holiday.
- 10- Before Yasser's dad got married, he ..... (doesn't) use to live in Cairo
- 11- Where did you..... (went) on holiday last summer
- 12- What.....( do) you visit last week ?
- 13-How..... (did )your day yesterday ?
- 14-He swam in the sea, but he didn't .....(saw) any dolphins.
- 15- How did you.....( used) to go to school?

- 16- Do you use to have a lot of homework?
- 17- Before he had children, Yasser’s grandfather .....(not )use to know how to drive a car.
- 18- What was your favourite toy when you .....(be) little?
- 19-In 1990, he.....(become)the number one chess player in our city.
- 20-I didn’t.....( used) to like salad when I was younger.
- 21-We used to.....( playing) football.
- 22-My Uncle Rashid .....(be) born in 1961.
- 23-I .....(not use) to like fish when I was young.
- 24-Did you visit the Pyramids when you .....(be) young?

**6-Write a paragraph of (90) words on**

**A person that you are proud of (your hero)**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**a great job you like**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**your past habits**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**how life used to be different in ancient Egypt**

## Unit 4 Into the past

arch	قوس	ruins	اطلال	interesting	شيق
castle	قلعة	stadium	استاذ	protect	يحمى
Complete building	مبنى كامل	statue	تمثال	race	سياق
culture	ثقافة	temple	معبد	recommend	يرشح/يوصى ب
entrance	مدخل	theatre	مسرح	review	مقال نقدية
historic	تاريخي	amazing	مذهل	museum	متحف
mosque	مسجد	ancient	قديم/ اثرى جدا	roman	رومانى
national	قومي/ وطني	awesome	رائع	ticket	تذكرة
pray	يصلى	behave	يتصرف	time	عهد/ عصر
bowl	سلطانية	The museum of Islamic art	متحف الفن الاسلامي	popular	محبوب/ شعبي
coin	عملة معدنية	tool	اداة	senet	لعبة تشبه الشطرنج
figure	شكل	vase	فازة	square	مربع
magazine	مجلة	Web page	صفحة ويب	ingredients	مكونات/مقادير
mask	قناع	chemical	مادة كيميائية	mix	يخلط
necklace	عقد/ قلادة	clay	طين صلصال	ring	خاتم
papyrus	ورق البردى	design	تصميم	pot	اناء
company	شركة	debate	مناظرة	maybe	ربما
historic	تاريخي	environment	البيئة	tourism	السياحة
damage	يتلف	Local people	السكان المحليين	tourist	سائح
area	منطقة	pharaoh	فرعون	special	خاص
century	قرن ١٠٠ عام	report	تقرير	Stone circles	الدوائر الحجرية
follow	يتبع	ruler	حاكم	war	حرب

### 2-Complete the following dialogue:

1-Amira .What do you think, Hana? Is tourism good for historic places?

Hana : Yes, I (1).....

Amira : Why do you think that?

Hana . Because tourists bring money to an area. This helps the local people.

Amira : 2.....think so.

Hana : Why not?

Amira : As a lot of money goes to big companies, not (3).....people.

Hana : Maybe, but some holiday companies help the environment and the local people.



Amira : I (4).....agree. Tourists drop rubbish and damage places.

Hana : I see what you (5)..... , but most tourists behave well.

2-Fady : Hello, Baher. How are you?

Baher : Hi, Fady. Do you (1).....this plan for a new hotel is a good idea?

Fady : I don't think (2) .....It only has jobs for people in the city.

Baher : I don't (3).....More tourists in the area can help the local people.

Fady : Maybe, but what about the water? Taking water from the lake will damage the environment.

Baher : I see what you (4).....It's important to protect the environment.

Fady : Yes, we should do our best to make it (5).....

Baher : And we should tell other people to look after it.

Fady : I agree with you. Let's talk about that tomorrow.

Baher : That sounds good.

3-Ticket office : Good morning, the Egyptian Museum. How can I help you?

Customer : Good morning. (1).....you tell me your working hours?

Ticket office : (2).....We're open daily from 9:30 to 6:30.

Customer : (3).....like to know how much the tickets are?

Ticket office : Of course. Adults are 150 pounds and children under 12 are 75 pounds.

Customer : Can I buy the tickets at the museum?

Ticket office : Yes, or you can buy them online.

Customer : I'd (4).....to know if I could bring my camera with me.

Ticket office : Of course. But you mustn't take photos inside the museum.

Customer : (5).....you for your help. Goodbye.

4.Hany : Did you visit Jerash before?

Samy : Sorry, What is Jerash?

Hany : Jerash is a Roman (1) ..... in Jordan.

Samy : How (2) ..... is it?

Hany : It is more than 2,000 (3) ..... old!

Samy : How can I visit it?

Hany : You (4) ..... buy a ticket before you go in.

Samy : Are there any theatres in Jerash?

Hany : Sure. Jerash has three Roman(5) .....

### **3-Read the following , then answer the questions :**

1-The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. However, the museum didn't have space for 100,000 other objects. In 2002, there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,575 designs from more than 80 different countries.

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is **further** from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza, **It** has more space for valuable objects. More people can see them and it is able to look after the objects really well.

**a. Answer the following questions:**

- 1. Give a suitable title for this passage. ....
- 2. What do you think of museums? .....
- 3. How old is the oldest museum? .....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 4. The word "further" is the opposite of.....  
a. ancient      b. nearer      c. far      d.open
- 5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to.....  
a. the city centre      b.Giza      c the old museum      d. GEM
- 6. The museum is a place to keep.....on display.  
a.designs      b. pyramids      c. treasures      d. visitors

2.We don't know who made tea for the first time, but we have heard and read many stories about that Nearly five thousand years ago, the king of China boiled his drinking water under a tree. Some of the leaves fell into the pot When he drank the water, he liked the taste very much. He thought that the taste came from the leaves of the tree. People drink tea because they think it helps them stay awake for a long time. We all know that tea is grown in China and India. Many People like to drink tea with milk. Others like to have it with lemon when they feel tired. People usually have tea in the morning and after lunch.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1. Why do people drink tea?.....
- 2. When do people usually drink tea?.....
- 3.What does the underlined pronoun " it " refer to?.....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4.The underlined word "Nearly"1 means.....  
a) opposite      b) almost      c) nearby      d) far
- 5. People usually drink tea with.....when they are tired  
a) milk      b) orange      c) lemon      d) leaves
- 6.Tea is grown in.....  
a) Japan      b) China      c) India      d) both b

3.Egypt has a lot of ancient and modern places to visit. The Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Cairo. It took five years to build. It opened in1961. It is 187 metres tall and stands next to the Nile on Gezira Island. There is a restaurant at the top . It moves, so you can see all of the city below you. There are 24 windows on each floor of the building. If you want to walk to the top, there are 2,500 stairs ! At night, the colours on the tower change. It is a wonderful building!

**a. Answer the following questions:**

- 1. Where does the Cairo tower stand ? .....
- 2. How many windows are there on each floor ?.....
- 3. What does the underlined word " it " refer to? .....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 4. There are .....stairs  
a) 2050      b)5.200      c) 1000      d) 2.500
- 5. The Cairo tower is .....  
a. dangerous      b.ugly      c fantastic      d. small
- 6. Building the tower started in.....  
a) 1961      b)1916      c) 1950      d) 1956

4.Many tourists like to visit Egypt. They usually come to Egypt in winter. They love to enjoy the fine weather. They visit many places in Egypt such as the Cairo Tower, the Pyramids and the temples. They enjoy the wonderful weather of Luxor and Aswan in winter. They usually take photos of the ancient temples in Egypt and they buy many things as souvenirs to remind them of Egypt. Other tourists like the beautiful beaches in Egypt, so they like to come in summer. They like to visit Hurghada for its fantastic beaches.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. Which places do tourists come to see in Egypt?.....
2. Why do they usually go to Luxor and Aswan in winter?.....
- 3.What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?.....

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4.Tourists visit Luxor and Aswan in.....  
a) summer      b) spring      c) fall      d) winter
- 5.The underlined word "ancient" means very.....  
a) new      b)old      c) near      d) interesting
6. Tourists go to.....to enjoy the beaches there.  
a) Aswan      b) Luxor      c) Hurghada      d) Cairo

**4--choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

- 1 We walked under a big ..... before we entered the museum. **WB**  
a) arch      b)statue      c) castle      d) mosque
2. This building became ..... after an earthquake. **WB**  
a) statues      b) ruins      c) castles      d) mosques
- 3.There are more than 2,000.....in the museum.. **WB**  
a) subjects      b) projects      c) parts      d) objects
- 4.Heba is not interested .....playing tennis. **WB**  
a) on      b) in      c) with      d) to
- 5 We are proud of our.....handball team. They won the cup.  
a) world      b) modern      c) ancient      d) national
- 6 In the past, people built.....to watch their favourite sports.  
a) museums      b) mosques      c) stadiums      d) theatres
- 7 We bought a new house with a large.....  
a) entrance      b)wall      c) ruin      d) castle
- 8 Children must learn how to.....politely all the time.  
a) treat      b) behave      c) do      d) make
- 9 When I look out of my bedroom window, I have a beautiful....  
a) location      b) sight      c)view      d) review
- 10-They didn't complete this building at all. These.....are thousands of years old.  
a) ruins      b) arches      c) entrances      d) castles
- 11 This old castle.....to the Romans times.  
a) gets      b) dates      c) goes      d) jumps
- 12 When you travel to a historic place, you should.....a guide.  
a) make      b) get      c) teach      d) buy
- 13 Many people are interested.....watching football matches.  
a) in      b) at      c) on      d)onto
- 14 Students usually bring.....lunch with them on a trip.  
a) bucket      b) packet      c) baked      d)packed
- 15 This book is very interesting. I....it to you.  
a) recommend      b) advise      c) tell      d)say
- 16 The trip was.....It was amazing.  
a) scary      b) pleased      c) awesome      d) boring



17. We call something is.....when it is very old.  
a) new                      b) modern                      c) patient                      d) ancient
18. People build.....to pray in.  
a) statues                      b) ruins                      c) castles                      d) mosques
19. The museum is full of.....and many other historic objects.  
a) theatres                      b) statues                      c) stadiums                      d) castles
20. Ancient Egyptians made pots and bowls of.....from the Nile.  
a) metal                      b) wool                      c) clay                      d) water
21. Ancient Egyptians used.....for writing.  
a) papyrus                      b) wood                      c) wool                      d) paper
22. A.....is a piece of metal used as money.  
a) pot                      b) bowl                      c) can                      d) coin
23. Some boys wore.....on their faces to frighten girls.  
a) shorts                      b) skirts                      c) masks                      d) shirts
24. My grandmother gave me a beautiful.....on my birthday which I can wear a round my neck.  
a) ring                      b) watch                      c) jumper                      d) necklace
25. My mother wears two.....on her fingers. They are expensive.  
a) rings                      b) watches                      c) scarfs                      d) necklaces
26. Bees and ants are small..... **WB**  
a) animals                      b) birds                      c) insects                      d) turtles
27. People wear sunglasses to.....their eyes from the sun.  
a) affect                      b) protect                      c) infect                      d) give
28. My father's mobile phone.....him a lot of money. It's very expensive.  
a) cost                      b) paid                      c) bought                      d) sold
29. There is a .....of flowers on the table next to my bed.  
a) bottle                      b) vase                      c) bag                      d) glass
30. The shop is very crowded today. There are many.....  
a) waiters                      b) customers                      c) sellers                      d) objects
31. We go to school every day.....holidays.  
a) accept                      b) expect                      c) except                      d) aspect
32. There was a.....in our class about how we help the environment.  
a) debate                      b) date                      c) carpet                      d) lamp
- 33.....is important for Egypt because it brings a lot of money and jobs.  
a) Infection                      b) illness                      c) Pollution                      d) Tourism
34. We should protect our.....places because they are very important.  
a) history                      b) historian                      c) geography                      d) historic
35. Some tourists are careless because they.....rubbish in historic places.  
a) drop                      b) make                      c) lend                      d) mix
36. Some projects in the area help.....people to find jobs easily.  
a) strange                      b) local                      c) historic                      d) natural
37. Some people think that tourists can.....important places.  
a) attack                      b) attract                      c) damage                      d) debate
38. A.....is a period of 100 years.  
a) month                      b) week                      c) decade                      d) century
39. I want to know what happened.....Hazem last night.  
a) to                      b) in                      c) under                      d) at
40. My brother works in a big.....that organises holidays.  
a) fort                      b) castle                      c) palace                      d) company
41. Muhammad Ali was the.....of Egypt in the past. He was the most important person.  
a) ruler                      b) roller                      c) baker                      d) waiter
42. This chemical helps to keep .....mosquitos. **WB**  
a) away                      b) by                      c) for                      d) in
43. A .....is a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair thing. **WB**  
a) vase                      b) tap                      c) tool                      d) pot

- 44..A.....is a model of a person. **WB**  
a) figure                      b) tap                      c ) coin                      d) pot
- 45.Popele used bowls to.....ingredients.  
a) repair                      b) mix                      c ) do                      d) paint
- 46-.....are damaging many countries around the world.  
a) wars                      b) weddings                      c ) birthdays                      d) parties
- 47.There are .....schools for deaf people who cannot hear.  
a) special                      b) tourist                      c ) crowded                      d) ugly
- 48.Tourism is good .....our country  
a) at                      b) with                      c ) for                      d) to
- 49.I read an interesting .....about tourism in a magazine  
a) debate                      b) report                      c ) paper                      d) plan
- 50.You can see many .....in the museum  
a) castles                      b) prayers                      c ) statues                      d) arches

grammar

Must / mustn't

**must** يجب : تدل على وجوب فعل شئ في الوقت الحاضر – اجباري أو ضروري

must + inf

- ☉ you **must look** right and left before you cross the road.
- ☉ They **must arrive** on time. .
- ☉ We **must be** careful in the laboratory!

**must = it is necessary/important to + inf** هام ← من الضروري/المهم ان

**mustn't** لا يجب : تدل على المنع أو التحريم أو عدم وجوب فعل شئ في الحاضر

mustn't + inf

- ☒ You **mustn't talk** in the library.
- ☒ in a museum , you **mustn't touch** he objects .
- ☒ We **mustn't talk** to each other in the lesson

السؤال : Question

عند تكوين السؤال ب Yes / No نتبع الاتي :

must + فاعل + مصدر + الجملة ؟

→ Must we put the rubbish in the bin ? √- Yes, you must    √- No, you mustn't

الماضي المستمر The past continuous tense

١. التكوين Form

١- في حالة الإثبات: يتكون الماضي المستمر من ( was/were + verb + ing ) فاعل

➤ They **were watching** TV yesterday evening.

٢- في حالة النفي: يتكون من

I , He , She, It                      →    was not                      + ( v + ing ).  
We, You, They                      →    weren't

➤ Jana **wasn't making** dinner.

They weren't swimming

٣- في حالة السؤال: يتكون من

فتبع الآتى :

عند تكوين السؤال بهل



**Was + (I/he / she / It) + v + ing ?**

**Were + (we/you / they) + v + ing ?**

**E.g** ➤ Was he/she (having lunch)? Yes, he/she was. No, he/she wasn't

➔ Were you watching TV ? yes, I was / No, I wasn't.

➔ Did you watch TV last night? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

عند تكوين السؤال ب كلمة استفهام :



كلمة استفهام

**Was + (I/he / she / It) + v + ing ?**

**Were + (we/you / they) + v + ing ?**

⌘ - What were they doing at 5 yesterday?

They were playing football

٢. الاستخدام Usage :

نستخدم الماضي المستمر

١- للتعبير عن حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي في وقت معين

➤ Tarek was eating dinner at noon yesterday.

They were studying English at 8 p.m last night

٢- للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا عندما قطعه حدث آخر في الماضي.

➤ While/As I was having lunch , the phone rang

➤ While ( As/ Just as/ when) I was going home, I met one of my best friends.

➤ When I returned home, mother was preparing lunch

٣. الكلمات الدالة Key words :

(all + morning, afternoon, evening, night, time ), while بينما , as بينما , just as بينما , when عندما ,  
طول اليوم امس between 6 and 8 , at ...o'clock yesterday , at...o'clock last, The whole/all day yesterday

لاحظ استخدام الماضي المستمر والماضي البسيط مع (when/while/As)

**While /As/ When**

➔ ماضى مستمر

➔ ماضى بسيط

e.g -While I was reading my book, the phone rang.

As/When we were walking into the museum , we saw some old statues

➔ ماضى بسيط

**While /As/ When**

➔ ماضى مستمر

my father arrived while my mother was cooking

➔ ماضى مستمر

**When**

➔ ماضى بسيط

my mother was cooking when my father arrived

1. You .....look right and left before you cross the road

a) must

b) mustn't

c) shouldn't

d) don't have to

2- You ..... drink water from the river. It's not clean.



- a) doesn't have to      b) have to      c) has to      d) mustn't  
 3 You.....turn the music up too loud; you will harm our ears.  
 a) doesn't have to      b) have to      c) has to      d) mustn't  
 4) You.....do the housework. Our mother is ill.  
 a) must      b) mustn't      c) shouldn't      d) have  
 5 This was a nice evening. We must.....again.  
 a) meet      b) meeting      c) met      d) to meet  
 6 You.....brush your teeth three times a day. It's good for your teeth  
 a) have to      b) don't have to      c) mustn't      d) must  
 7 You.....forget to do your homework regularly.  
 a) must to      b) must      c) mustn't to      d) mustn't  
 8 You.....be kind to your friends.  
 a) mustn't      b) must      c) must never      d) shouldn't  
 9 It's late. You.....never make so much noise.  
 a) mustn't      b) must      c) shouldn't      d) don't  
 10 At school, you.....listen to your teacher.  
 a) have      b) must      c) mustn't      d) has to  
 11.a You.....be home on time. Don't be late.  
 a) must      b) mustn't      c) shouldn't      d) don't have to  
 12.This is a valuable book. you.....keep it and mustn't lose it.  
 a) must      b) mustn't      c) shouldn't      d) haven't  
 13- The telephone rang while Tamer.....doing his homework.  
 a) was      b) is      c) were      d) are  
 14 Sanaa heard the noise.....she was watching a film.  
 a) if      b) as      c) so      d) because  
 15 We were playing tennis when Tamer.....his ankle.  
 a) hurting      b) hurt      c) was hurting      d) is hurting  
 16. Someone opened the door while I.....  
 a) was sleeping      b) was slept      c) sleeping      d) slept  
 17.While I was looking out of the window, it.....to rain.  
 a) started      b) was started      c) was starting      d) starting  
 18. As I.....for tomorrow's game, I fell down and hurt my leg.  
 a) practise      b) practising      c) practised      d) was practising  
 19. When I was younger, I.....pizza almost every day.  
 a) eaten      b) eat      c) ate      d) was eating  
 20.The boys didn't play because it.....  
 a) rained      b) was raining      c) rains      d) raining  
 21.What.....at 10 pm last night?  
 a) were they doing      b) did they do      c) did they use to do      d) are they doing  
 22. Yesterday, I ..... a play at 10 o'clock.  
 a. have watched      b. was watching      c. was watched      d. watched  
 23. I was studying my lessons when the lights ..... out.  
 a. goes      b. went      c. were going      d. gone  
 24. I ..... my lunch when the phone rang.  
 a. have eaten      b. was eating      c. has eaten      d. ate  
 25) Last year, we.....to the beautiful city of Venice in Italy.  
 a. were travelling      b. travel      c. travelled      d. travels  
 26.It started to rain while they.....home.  
 a) walking      b) were walking      c) walked      d) walk  
 27.My father was watching TV when the phone.....  
 a) ring      b) rung      c) rang      d) was ringing  
 28. When we sat down for a picnic, lots of runners .....through the park. **WE**  
 a) run      b) was running      c) ran      d) were running  
 29 As Karim was taking photos of the animals, he .....his phone. **WE**  
 a) lost      b) was losing      c) loses      d) losing

- 30 While Mona.....tennis, she hurt her arm. **WB**  
a. plays                                      b. played                                      c. was playing                                      d. were playing
31. I was doing my homework when my sister.....me. **WB**  
a. was calling                                      b. calls                                      c. called                                      d. calling
32. Lots of birds..... in the sky as we were sitting down on the beach **WB**  
a. was flying                                      b. flew                                      c. fly                                      d. were flying

**5- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.**

- 1 You..... (mustn't )study hard if you want to pass your exams.  
2 You mustn't..... (using) a mobile phone in class.  
3 You mustn't..... (to forget) your bag and books.  
4 Students and teachers must .....(are) polite to each other.  
5.We must..... (to go) to the laboratory for our science lessons  
6. People .....(must) throw rubbish in the street.  
7 They..... (have) tea when the doorbell rang.  
8 When he .....(arrive), we were having dinner.  
9 While I .....(sweep) the floor , I heard a noise.  
10.They..... (forget) their books yesterday.  
11.It's a No parking area. you .....(must) park here.  
12.I was doing my homework when my sister .....(call) me.  
13.At four p.m. yesterday, I..... (do )my homework.  
14.I was walking through the park when I..... (meet) Adel.  
15.While I was texting my friends, the school bus..... (arrive).  
16..During an exam, you..... (must )copy from the other students.  
17. I .....(must) forget my wife's birthday, so I have to buy a card today.  
18.When we sat down for a picnic, lots of runners .....(run)through the park  
19.While Mona..... (play)tennis, she hurt her arm.

**6-Write a paragraph of (90) words on**

A historic place in Egypt

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

an ancient egyptian object

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Test based on unit 3

### A. Listening (4 marks)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 M)



1. What's your brother's name?

- a) Ahmed      b) Mohamed      c) Mahmoud      d) Hamed

2. Which sport does he love playing?

- a) tennis      b) basketball      c) football      d) handball

3. When did he play for a school junior team?

- a) this year      b) last year      c) next year      d) yesterday

4. Did his team win?

- a) Sure      b) Yes      c) No      d) Okay

### B. Language functions (5 marks)

2. Complete the following dialogue with one word each: (5 M)

***Hussein and Youssef are talking about doctors***

**Hussein:** I think that all doctors are heroes.

**Youssef:** .....

**Hussein:** I mean, they are "The White Army".

**Youssef:** .....

**Hussein:** People called them the white army because they saved many of them from dying.

**Youssef:** Ah ! .....

**Hussein:** Thanks to doctors, many of people are saved from COVID-19.

**Youssef:** .....

**Hussein:** What do you think of the nurses?

**Youssef:** .....



### C. Reading Comprehension (6 marks)

3. Read the following then answer the questions: (6 M)

Teachers are people who teach students and help them to learn. They often work in schools. Teaching is one of the most important jobs in a country. It's difficult but enjoyable work. A good teacher helps the students to understand their lessons and to develop their creativity. He discovers the treasure hidden inside each student. He also wants the students to be useful and happy. A teacher must be honored and respected by all.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Who are teachers?

.....

2. Where do they often work?

.....

3. Is teaching an important job?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underline word "**them**" refers to .....

a)schools      b)students      c)teachers      d)jobs

5. Teachers want students to be .....

a)useless      b)funny      c)useful      d)sad

6. Teaching is a/an ..... work.

a)easy      b)enjoyable      c)bad      d)boring

### D. Vocabulary and Structure (14 marks)

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (10 M)

1. A junior team is for ..... people.  
a) old                      b) fat                      c) young                      d) tall
2. Mr. Ahmed was born ..... 1989.  
a) on                      b) in                      c) at                      d) to
3. Did you ..... to the Egyptian Museum last week?  
a) go                      b) going                      c) goes                      d) went
4. A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.  
a) hero                      b) volunteer                      c) player                      d) actor
5. .... the meat into small pieces before you cook it.  
a) Cut                      b) Mend                      c) Boil                      d) Pump
6. The ..... tells the parts of the body what to do.  
a) stomach                      b) heart                      c) eye                      d) brain
7. When he was a child, Akram ..... to drink much cola.  
a) use                      b) used                      c) using                      d) uses
8. This lion makes me feel ..... It's very scary.  
a) frightened                      b) happy                      c) excited                      d) thirsty
9. The earthquake is a natural .....  
a) poster                      b) disaster                      c) sister                      d) monster
10. Aunt Reem ..... as a teacher when she was 20.  
a) works                      b) work                      c) workings                      d) worked

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets: (4M)

1. I ..... (use) to cry, when I was young.
2. We ..... (don't) go to school yesterday.
3. Dina ..... (buys) a beautiful dress last week.
4. .... (Do) people use to fly in the past?

Subject: ..... **New Hello - Prep 2** ..... Date : **2023 / 2024** .....

## E. Writing (6 marks)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY words on: (6 M)

**A person that you are proud of**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**With my best wishes**



**Listening Material:**

My brother is called Ahmed. He is ten years old. He is a football player, and he loves playing football with his friends. Last year, he played for a school junior team, but his team didn't win. I hope he wins this year.

هذا العمل من إعداد

المستر: أحمد نبيل

مدرس اللغة الإنجليزية للمرحلتين الابتدائية

والإعدادية بالمنصورة

رقم الهاتف والواتساب: 01066444768

للحصول على المزيد يرجى التكرم بالضغط هذه الروابط أدناه



## Test based on unit 4

### A. Listening (4 marks)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 M)



1. What's your favourite place?

- a) Lake Nasser      b) High Dam      c) Red Sea      d) Alex

2. When were you camping there?

- a) Yesterday      b) Last week      c) Last month      d) Last Year

3. What did you see in the sand?

- a) Ring      b) Coin      c) Ball      d) Jewellery

4. Where did you take that thing?

- a) Home      b) Museum      c) Zoo      d) Garden

### B. Language functions (5 marks)

2. Complete the following dialogue with one word each: (5 M)

*Salma and Rahma are talking about the tourism*

**Salma:** Do you think, the tourism is good for historic places?

**Rahma:** Yes, sure. ....

**Salma:** .....?

**Rahma:** Yes, this helps the local people.

**Salma:** ..... A lot of money goes to big companies.

**Rahma:** Maybe, but some holidays companies help the environment.

**Salma:** I don't agree that tourism help the environment.

**Rahma:** .....?

**Salma:** Because tourists drop rubbish and damage places.

**Rahma:** ....., but most tourist are good.

### C. Reading Comprehension (6 marks)

#### 3. Read the following then answer the questions: (6 M)

Many people have visited the famous Egyptian Museum in Cairo. It's Egypt's biggest museum and it contains some very famous objects. There are about 136,000 historical objects in the museum. Most people want to see Tutankhamun and his jewellery. In the Kharga Museum of Antiquities, you can learn about life in the Western Desert long ago. You can see lots of statues, coins and other objects that people have found there. The museum contains some famous 'notebooks' made of wood. These are some of the first books ever written from 360 CE.

#### A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the biggest museum in Egypt?

.....

2. How many historical objects in the Egyptian Museum?

.....

3. Where can you find Tutankhamun and his jewellery?

.....

#### B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underline word "**his**" refers to .....

a) museum    b) jewellery    c) Tutankhamun    d) object

5. The Egyptian Museum is the ..... museum in Egypt.

a) biggest    b) youngest    c) smallest    d) tallest

6. Things are made of gold that people wear are .....

a) clothes    b) coins    c) jewellery    d) statues



### **D. Vocabulary and Structure (14 marks)**

**4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (10 M)**

1. I really enjoyed our day in Petra and recommend a/an.....  
a) view                      b) visit                      c) entrance                      d) arch
2. It's hot today, so you ..... all wear a hat.  
a) mustn't                      b) must                      c) haven't                      d) can't
3. It's a good idea to get a ..... to tell you about the history.  
a) policeman                      b) doctor                      c) driver                      d) guide
4. Can you tell me the ..... of the ticket, please?  
a) prize                      b) price                      c) culture                      d) figure
5. I was doing my homework when my sister ..... me.  
a) call                      b) calling                      c) calls                      d) called
6. Bees and ants are .....  
a) birds                      b) insects                      c) plants                      d) animals
7. People ..... the ingredients in big bowls.  
a) fixed                      b) mixed                      c) painted                      d) covered
8. Adel's uncle works for a big oil .....  
a) work                      b) job                      c) company                      d) hotel
9. As Kareem ..... photos of the animals, he lost his phone.  
a) were taking                      b) taking                      c) was taking                      d) taking
10. You can see beautiful ..... on Cleopatra's Needle.  
a) pyramids                      b) designs                      c) masks                      d) storms

**5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets: (4M)**

1. As we ..... (walked) in the museum, we saw statues.
2. What mustn't you ..... (doing) at the museum?
3. While we ..... (travelled) home, Amir phoned me.
4. You ..... (must to) put your rubbish in the bin.

Subject: ..... **New Hello - Prep 2** ..... Date : ..... **2023 / 2024** .....

## E. Writing (6 marks)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY words on: (6 M)

**A description of a historical place you visited**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Listening Material:**

My favourite place to visit every year is Lake Nasser. When we were camping, last year, I found a ring in the sand. I decided to take it to the museum near my house.

هذا العمل من إعداد

المستر: أحمد نبيل

مدرس اللغة الإنجليزية للمرحلتين الابتدائية

والإعدادية بالمنصورة

رقم الهاتف والواتساب: 01066444768

للحصول على المزيد يرجى التكرم بالضغط هذه الروابط أدناه

